This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

600093792-

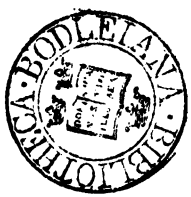
THE SCHOOL

LATIN GRAMMAR.

BY

ALEXANDER MARTIN, M.A.,

ONE OF THE CLASSICAL MASTERS IN THE GRAMMAR SCHOOL OF ABERDEEN, AND FORMERLY PRINCIPAL CLASSICAL MASTER IN THE GYMNASIUM, OLD ABERDEEN.



ABERDEEN:
A. BROWN AND CO.
EDINBURGH: JOHN MENZIES AND CO.
LONDON: LONGMAN AND CO.

1869.

305. f. 9.

600093792-

quite impossible to devote time to such a purpose. If the Classical languages are now to be learned at all, the most direct road must be taken to that end, as other branches of education have encroached so far upon the time previously allotted to them.

Considerable prominence has been given to the case-endings of regular nouns, and the tense-endings of regular verbs. If these are committed to memory in the first place apart from the stems, it will be found that the regular noun and verb can be learned with an ease and an accuracy quite unattainable by the usual method, especially if the pupil's knowledge of the terminations is occasionally tested by writing. The author has followed this plan for many years, with decided advantage, in teaching the elements both of Latin and Greek.

Ruddiman's rules, with considerable modifications and additions, form the chapter on case-construction.

The chapter on clause-construction has been made as intelligible as possible. Most of the examples are drawn directly from Classical writers, but wherever clearness and conciseness demanded, sentences framed on Classical models have been given as examples.

GRAMMAR SCHOOL, ABERDEEN,
December, 1868.

CONTENTS.

PART I.—ACCIDENCE.

Chapter		Page
I.	Letters and Words,	1
II.	Nouns,	2
	First Declension,	3
	Second Declension,	5
	Third Declension,	7
	Fourth Declension,	12
	Fifth Declension,	13
	Compound Nouns,	14
	Defective Nouns,	15
	Variable Nouns,	16
III.	Adjectives,	18
	First and Second Declension,	18
	Third Declension,	20
	Comparison of Adjectives,	23
	Irregular Comparison,	24
	Defective Comparison,	24
IV.	Numerals,	26
V.	Pronouns,	29
	Personal Pronouns,	29
	Possessive Pronouns,	30
	Demonstrative Pronouns,	30
	Relative Pronoun,	32
	Interrogative Pronouns,	32
	Indefinite Pronouns,	32
VI.	Verbs,	33
	Sum,	35
	Regular Verbs of the Active Form,	37
	Regular Verbs of the Passive Form,	40
	Inflexion of Tenses in the Four Conjugations,	42
	Verbs in IO of the Third Conjugation,	52
	Tenses of the Infinitive,	55
	Tenses of Necessity,	56
	Deponent Verbs,	57

Chapter		Page
VI.	VERBS—(Continued) :—	
	Semi-Deponent Verbs,	58
	Irregular Verbs,	59
	PROSUM,	60
	POSSUM,	61
	EO and REDEO,	62
	QUEO,	65
	VOLO, NOLO, and MALO,	65
	FERO,	68
	FIO,	70
	EDO,	71
	Preteritive Verbs,	72
	Impersonal Verbs,	74
	Verbs specially Defective,	78
VII.	ADVERBS,	80
	Formation of Adverbs,	80
	Comparison of Adverbs,	80
	Classification of Adverbs,	81
VIII.	PREPOSITIONS,	84
	Prepositions in Composition,	85
	Inseparable Particles,	86
IX.	CONJUNCTIONS,	86
X.	INTERJECTIONS,	88

PART II.—SYNTAX.

I.	CASE-CONSTRUCTION,	90
	Concord,	90
	Government of Nouns,	92
	Government of Adjectives,	93
	Government of Verbs,	94
	Gerunds,	99
	Supines,	100
	Place,	101
	Distance and Measure,	102
	Time,	103
	The Absolute Case,	103
	Price,	103
	Cause, Manner, and Instrument,	104
	Adverbs,	104
	Prepositions,	105
	Conjunctions,	106
	Interjections,	106

Chapter		Page
II.	CLAUSE-CONSTRUCTION,	106
	Use of SUI and SUUS,	106
	Double Negative,	108
	Sequence of Tenses,	109
	Indirect Narration,	111
	Interrogatives,	112
	UTINAM,	113
	NE (in prohibitions),	113
	QUAM,	113
	The Relative QUI,	115
	CUM, or QUUM,	116
	UT, UT NON, NE, and NEVE,	117
	QUOD, QUIA, and QUONIAM,	118
	SI, NISI, SIVE, QUASI, and DUMMODO,	119
	ETSI, QUANQUAM, QUAMVIS, and LICET,	120
	QUO, QUOMINUS, and QUIN,	120
	UBI, SIMULAC, and QUUM PRIMUM,	121
	ANTEQUAM, PRIUSQUAM, and POSTQUAM,	121
	DONEC, QUOAD, and DUM,	122

PART III.—PROSODY.

I.	QUANTITY,	123
	General Rules,	123
	Perfects and Supines of Verbs,	125
	Final Syllables,	126
II.	VERSE,	129
	Dactylic Verses,	132
	Iambic Verses,	134
	Trochaic Verses,	135
	Choriambic Verses,	136
	Anapaestic Verses,	137
	Mixed Verses,	138
	Combination of Verses,	138

APPENDICES.

Appendix A.	—Memorial Lines,	140
,, B.	—List of Verbs,	141
,, C.	—The Roman Calendar,	149

LATIN GRAMMAR.

PART I.

ACCIDENCE.

CHAPTER I.—LETTERS AND WORDS.

The Latin Alphabet consists of twenty-five Letters.

Capital,—A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.

Small,—a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

Note.—Cicero (*De Nat. Deor.* ii. 37, 93.) makes the number of letters in the Latin language to be only twenty-one. The Greek letters, y and z, had not been then introduced, and i and j were considered the same letter, as well as u and v.

Six of the letters are VOWELS, a, e, i, o, u, y.

The rest are CONSONANTS, divided thus—

Semi-vowels.....	l, m, n, r, *liquids*, s, *the sibilant*.
Mutes.....	t, d, *dentals*. p, b, f, v, *labials*. c, g, h, (j), k, qu, *gutturals*.
Double Consonants..	x, z.

There are five DIPHTHONGS, ae and oe (with e only sounded), au, eu, and ei.

These three Greek diphthongs are sometimes used, *ai*, *oi*, and *yi* or *ui*.

There are eight PARTS OF SPEECH, Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, and Interjection.

Of these four are *declinable*, Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, and Verb. The rest are *indeclinable*.

CHAPTER II.—NOUNS.

There are three GENDERS, Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

GENERAL RULES.—1. Names of Males, Winds, and Months, are always *masculine*, and usually names of Rivers and Mountains.

EXC.—These names of Rivers and Mountains are feminine; *Albŭla, Allia, Matrŏna, Styx; Aetna, Alpes, Ida, Rhodŏpe. Soracte* is neuter.

2. Names of Females are always *feminine*, and usually names of Countries, Islands, Cities, Trees, and Plants.

3. Indeclinable nouns are *neuter*.

Nouns are of the *Common Gender*, when they are masculine or feminine, according as they refer to males or females.

Thus, *parens*, a parent, is masculine for a *father*, and feminine for a *mother*.

There are two NUMBERS, Singular and Plural.

There are six CASES—

Nominative	*sign*	*none.*
Genitive	,,	of.
Dative	,,	to, *or* for.
Accusative	,,	*none.*
Vocative	,,	O! *or none.*
Ablative	,,	with, from, *or* by.

GENERAL RULES.—1. Neuter Nouns have the Nomina-

tive, Accusative, and Vocative alike in both Numbers; and these Cases in the Plural end always in *a*.

2. The Vocative, generally in the Singular, and always in the Plural, is like the Nominative.

3. The Dative and Ablative Plural are alike.

There are five DECLENSIONS.

First, *with the genitive singular in*				-ae.
Second,	,,	,,	,,	-i.
Third,	,,	,,	,,	-is.
Fourth,	,,	,,	,,	-ūs.
Fifth,	,,	,,	,,	-eī* *from a Nominative in* -es.

The STEM of a Noun or Adjective, to which the case endings are attached, is found by striking off the termination of the genitive singular.

Thus, nomin. sing.	*dŏmĭnus,*	genit.	*dŏmĭni,*	stem.	*dŏmĭn-*
,, ,,	*iter,*	,,	*itĭnĕris,*	,,	*itĭnĕr-*
,, ,,	*fructus,*	,,	*fructūs,*	,,	*fruct-*

FIRST DECLENSION.

Latin Nouns of the First Declension end in *a;* Greek Nouns, in *e, as,* and *es.*

LATIN NOUNS *in* A.

Case endings.	Mensa, fem., *a table.*
SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
Nom. ă.	*Nom.* mens-a, *a table.*
Gen. ae.	*Gen.* mens-ae, *of a table.*
Dat. ae.	*Dat.* mens-ae, *to,* or *for, a table.*
Acc. am.	*Acc.* mens-am, *a table.*
Voc. ă.	*Voc.* mens-a, *O table!*
Abl. ā.	*Abl.* mens-a, *with, from,* or *by, a table.*

* This is called the mark of *diæresis* (διαιρέω, separate), and indicates that the two vowels are to be pronounced *separately*, and not as a diphthong.

PLURAL.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	ae.	*Nom.*	mens-ae, *tables.*
Gen.	ārum.	*Gen.*	mens-ārum, *of tables.*
Dat.	īs.	*Dat.*	mens-īs, *to*, or *for*, *tables.*
Acc.	ās.	*Acc.*	mens-ās, *tables.*
Voc.	ae.	*Voc.*	mens-ae, *O tables!*
Abl.	īs.	*Abl.*	mens-īs, *with*, *from*, or *by*, *tables.*

In the same way are declined,—

Culpa, *f.*, *a fault.*	Persa, m., *a Persian.*	Sagitta, *f.*, *an arrow.*
Nauta, m., *a sailor.*	Hora, *f.*, *an hour.*	Via, *f.*, *a way.*
Femina, *f.*, *a woman.*	Regina, *f.*, *a queen.*	Insŭla, *f.*, *an island.*

Filia, a daughter; *nata*, a daughter; *dea*, a goddess; *liberta*, a freedwoman; and *equa*, a mare, have *ābus* instead of *is* in the dative and ablative plural, when it is necessary to distinguish them from masculines in *us* of the Second Declension.

Greek Nouns in e, as, *and* es.

Epitŏme, f., *an abridgment;* Tiāras, m., *a turban;* Priamĭdes, m., *a son of Priam.*

Case endings.				SINGULAR.		
	SINGULAR.					
Nom.	ē	ās	ēs.	*Nom.* epitom-e	tiar-as	Priamid-es
Gen.	ēs	ae	ae.	*Gen.* epitom-es	tiar-ae	Priamid-ae
Dat.	ae	ae	ae.	*Dat.* epitom-ae	tiar-ae	Priamid-ae
Acc.	ēn	am *or* an,	ēn.	*Acc.* epitom-en	tiar-am / -an	Priamid-en
Voc.	ē	ā	ē.	*Voc.* epitom-e	tiar-a	Priamid-e
Abl.	ē	ā	ē.	*Abl.* epitom-e	tiar-a	Priamid-e

The Plural has the same form as in Latin Nouns in *a*.

In the same way are declined,—

Crambe, *f.*, *cabbage.*	Æněas, m., *Æneas.*	Comētes, m., *a comet.*
Penelŏpe, *f.*, *Penelope.*	Midas, m., *Midas.*	Planētes, m., *a planet.*
Crete, *f.*, *Crete.*	Pythagŏras, m., *Pythagoras.*	Satrăpes, m., *a satrap.*

RULE FOR GENDER.—Nouns in *a* and *e* are feminine; in *as* and *es*, masculine.

EXC.—*Hadria*, when it means the Hadriatic sea, is masculine.

SECOND DECLENSION.

Latin Nouns of the Second Declension end in *er*, *ir*, *us*, and *um*; Greek Nouns, in *os* and *on*.

LATIN NOUNS *in* ER *and* IR.

Case endings.			Puer, m., *a boy*.		
	Sing.	Plur.		Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	*stem.*	ī.	*Nom.*	puer.	puĕr-ī.
Gen.	ī.	ōrum.	*Gen.*	puĕr-ī.	puer-ōrum.
Dat.	o.	īs.	*Dat.*	puĕr-o.	puĕr-īs.
Acc.	um.	ōs.	*Acc.*	puĕr-um.	puĕr-os.
Voc.	*stem.*	ī.	*Voc.*	puer.	puĕr-ī.
Abl.	o.	īs.	*Abl.*	puĕr-o.	puĕr-īs.

In the same way are declined,—

Vir, m., *a man.*	Socer, m., *a father-in-law.*	Līber, m., *Bacchus.*
Gener, m., *son-in-law.*	Ibēr, (*gen.* ēri), m., *a Spaniard.*	Vesper, m., *the evening.*

All Nouns in *er*, except *puer*, *gener*, *socer*, *Iber*, *Celtĭber*, *Liber*, and *vesper*, lose *e* before *r* in the oblique cases. (See App. A. II. 1.)

Sing. nom., **aper**, *a boar*; gen., **apri**; dat., **apro**, &c.
Plur. nom., **apri**, *boars*; gen., **aprorum**; dat., **aprīs**, &c.

In the same way are declined,—

Līber, m., *a book.*	Alexander, m., *Alexander.*	Caper, m., *a he-goat.*
Ager, m., *a field.*	Magister, m., *a master.*	Faber, m., *a workman.*

LATIN NOUNS *in* US.

The Nominative in *us* makes the Vocative in *e*, as nom., *ventus*; voc., *vente*: nom., *fluvius*; voc., *fluvie*: nom., *Darīus*; voc., *Darīe*.

	Case endings.		Ventŭs, m., *the wind.*		
	Sing.	Plur.		Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	ŭs.	ī.	*Nom.*	vent-us.	vent-ī.
Gen.	ī.	ōrum.	*Gen.*	vent-ī.	vent-ōrum.
Dat.	o.	īs.	*Dat.*	vent-o.	vent-īs.
Acc.	um.	ōs.	*Acc.*	vent-um.	vent-os.
Voc.	e.	ī.	*Voc.*	vent-e.	vent-ī.
Abl.	o.	īs.	*Abl.*	vent-o.	vent-īs.

In the same way are declined,—

Dominus, m., *a lord.*	Titus, m., *Titus.*	Equus, m., *a horse.*
Fluvius, m., *a river.*	Puteus, m., *a well.*	Animus, m., *the mind.*

Proper names in *ius*, with *filius* and *genius*, lose *us* in the Vocative, as nom., *Georgius;* voc., *Georgi:* nom., *filius;* voc., *fili.*

Deus, a god, is declined thus:—

	Nom.	*Gen.*	*Dat.*	*Acc.*	*Voc.*	*Abl.*
Sing.	deus.	dei.	deo.	deum.	deus.	deo.
Plur.	dii (di.)	deorum.	diis (dis.)	deos.	dii (di.)	diis (dis.)

LATIN NOUNS *in* UM.

Case endings.			Donum, n., *a gift.*		
	Sing.	Plur.		Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	um.	a.	*Nom.*	don-um.	don-a.
Gen.	i.	ōrum.	*Gen.*	don-i.	don-ōrum.
Dat.	o.	is.	*Dat.*	don-o.	don-is.
Acc.	um.	a.	*Acc.*	don-um.	don-a.
Voc.	um.	a.	*Voc.*	don-um.	don-a.
Abl.	o.	is.	*Abl.*	don-o.	don-is.

In the same way are declined,—

Pomum, n., *an apple.*	Jugum, n., *a yoke.*	Regnum, n., *a kingdom.*
Factum, n., *an action.*	Templum, n., *a temple.*	Somnium, n., *a dream.*

Greek Nouns in OS *and* ON.

Case endings.			Délos, f., *Delos.*		Ilion, n., *Troy.*	
	Singular.			Singular.		
Nom.	ōs.	ōn	*Nom.*	Del-os.	Ili-on.	
Gen.	i.	i.	*Gen.*	Del-i.	Ili-i.	
Dat.	o.	o.	*Dat.*	Del-o.	Ili-o.	
Acc.	ōn.	ōn	*Acc.*	Del-on.	Ili-on.	
Voc.	e.	ōn.	*Voc.*	Del-e.	Ili-on.	
Abl.	o.	o.	*Abl.*	Del-o.	Ili-o.	

The plural has the same form as in *us* and *um.*

In the same way are declined,—

Diametros, f., *a diameter.*	Gymnasion, n., *a gymnasium.*
Naxos, f., *Naxos.*	Idōlon, n., *an image.*
Paros, f., *Paros.*	Albion, n., *Great Britain.*

Rule for Gender.—Nouns in *er*, *ir*, *us*, and *os*, are generally masculine; in *um* and *on*, always neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.—(See App. A. I. 1.)

Alvus, *the belly.*
Dialectus, *a dialect.*
Domus, *a house.*
Humus, *the ground.*
Ficus, *a fig*, or *fig tree.*
} *fem.*

Pelăgus, *the sea.*
Virus, *poison.*
} *neut.*
Vulgus, *the rabble*, *neut. rather than masc.*

THIRD DECLENSION.

Nouns of the Third Declension have various terminations.

LATIN NOUNS—*Masculine and Feminine.*

	Case endings.		Homer, m., *honour.*		
	SING.	PLUR.		SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	*various.*	ēs.	*Nom.*	honor.	honōr-es.
Gen.	is.	um.	*Gen.*	honōr-is.	honōr-um.
Dat.	i.	ibus.	*Dat.*	honōr-i.	honor-ibus.
Acc.	em.	ēs.	*Acc.*	honōr-em.	honōr-es.
Voc.	*like nom.*	ēs.	*Voc.*	honor.	honōr-es.
Abl.	e.	ibus.	*Abl.*	honōr-e.	honor-ibus.

In the same way are declined,—

Timor, timōris, m., *fear.*
Sermo, sermōnis, m., *speech.*
Mos, moris, m., *a custom.*
Lex, legis, *f.*, *a law.*
Vox, vocis, *f.*, *a voice.*
Miles, militis, m., *a soldier.*
Conjux, conjŭgis, c., *a spouse.*
Virgo, virgĭnis, *f.*, *a virgin.*
Remex, remĭgis, m., *a rower.*
Laus, laudis, *f.*, *praise.*
Caesar, Caesăris, m., *Cæsar.*
Homo, hominis, m., *a man.*

1. *Exceptions in Accusative and Ablative Singular.*

(1.) Proper Nouns in *is*, not increasing in the genitive and not names of persons; and also *sitis*, thirst, and *vis*, force, have *im* in the accusative and *i* in the ablative singular.

Thus—*Tamĕsis, Tamĕsis*, m., the Thames; acc., *Tamĕsim;* abl., *Tamĕsi. Sĭtis*, f., thirst; acc., *sĭtim;* abl., *sĭti.* But *Juvenālis, Juvenālis*, m., Juvenal (a man's name); acc., *Juvenālem;* abl., *Juvenāle.*

(2.) *Turris*, a tower; *puppis*, a stern; *restis*, a rope; and *secūris*, an axe, have *im* rather than *em*, and *i* rather than *e*.

Note.—*Ignis*, fire, has *igni* in the expressions, *Aqua et igni interdicere*, to interdict from fire and water, and *Ferro ignique*, with fire and sword.

2. *Exceptions in Genitive Plural.*

(1.) Monosyllables in *as*, and in *s* or *x* preceded by a consonant, and nouns in *ns*, have *ium*. But *opis*, gen. (from *ops*, not used) has *opum*.

Thus—as, assis, m., *a penny*,	*gen. plur.*	assium.
urbs, urbis, f., *a city*,	,,	urbium.
arx, arcis, f., *a citadel*,	,,	arcium.
infans, infantis, c., *an infant*,	,,	infantium.

(2.) Nouns in *es* and *is*, not increasing in the genitive singular, have *ium*. But *canis*, a dog; *panis*, bread; *vates*, a prophet; and *juvĕnis*, a youth, have *um*.

Thus—sedes, sedis, f., *a seat*,	*gen. plur.*	sedium.
navis, navis, f., *a ship*,	,,	navium.
juvĕnis, juvĕnis, c., *a youth*,	,,	juvĕnum.

(3.) The following nouns have *ium*. (See App. A. II. 2.)

caro, f., *flesh*,	carnium.	lis, f., *a strife*,	litium.
cohors, f., *a cohort*,	cohortium.	mus, m., *a mouse*,	murium.
cor, n., *the heart*,	cordium.	nix, f., *snow*,	nivium.
cos, f., *a whetstone*,	cotium.	nox, f., *a night*,	noctium.
dos, f., *a dowry*,	dotium.	os, n., *a bone*,	ossium.
(faux), f., *the jaw*,	faucium.	Quiris, m., *a Roman*,	Quiritium.
glis, m., *a dormouse*,	glirium.	sales (pl.), m., *witticisms*,	salium.
imber, m., *a shower*,	imbrium.	Samnis, m., *a Samnite*,	Samnitium.
lar, m., *a household god*,	larium.	uter, m., *a skin*,	utrium.
linter, m. or f., *a little boat*,	lintrium.	venter, m., *the belly*,	ventrium.

Note 1.—*Bos*, *bovis*, an ox, has *boum* in the gen., and *bobus* or *bubus* in the dat. and abl. plural.

Note 2.—Names of Festivals have sometimes *orum*. Thus *Saturnalia* has gen. *Saturnalium* and *Saturnaliorum*.

The following nouns are declined irregularly—

clades, cladis, f., *a defeat* (2. (2)).	bos, bovis, m. or f., *an ox* (*n.* 1).
mons, montis, m., *a mountain* (2. (1)).	canis, canis, m. or f., *a dog* (2. (2)).
sitis, sitis, f., *thirst* (1. (1)).	ovis, ovis, f., *a sheep* (2. (2)).
securis, securis, f., *an axe* (1. (2), 2. (2)).	cliens, clientis, m., *a client* (2 (1)).
vas, vadis, m., *a surety* (2. (1)).	cohors, cohortis, f., *a cohort* (2. (3)).
nox, noctis, f., *a night* (2. (3)).	falx, falcis, f., *a sickle* (2. (1)).

LATIN NOUNS—*Neuter.*

Case endings.			Caput, n., *the head.*		
	Sing.	Plur.		Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	*various.*	a.	*Nom.*	caput.	capit-a.
Gen.	is.	um.	*Gen.*	capit-is.	capit-um.
Dat.	i.	ibus.	*Dat.*	capit-i.	capit-ibus.
Acc.	*like nom.*	a.	*Acc.*	caput.	capit-a.
Voc.	*like nom.*	a.	*Voc.*	caput.	capit-a.
Abl.	e.	ibus.	*Abl.*	capit-e.	capit-ibus.

In the same way are declined,—

Poēma, poēmătis, n., *a poem.*
Tempus, tempŏris, n., *time.*
Iter, itinĕris, n., *a journey.*
Onus, onĕris, n., *a burden.*
Carmen, carmĭnis, n., *a song.*
Cadāver, cadavĕris, n., *a carcase.*

Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar* have *i* in the ablative singular, *ium* in the genitive, and *ia* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural.

Case endings.			Sedile, n., *a seat.*		
	Sing.	Plur.		Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	e.	ia.	*Nom.*	sedil-e.	sedil-ia.
Gen.	is.	ium.	*Gen.*	sedil-is.	sedil-ium.
Dat.	i.	ibus.	*Dat.*	sedil-i.	sedil-ibus.
Acc.	e.	ia.	*Acc.*	sedil-e.	sedil-ia.
Voc.	e.	ia.	*Voc.*	sedil-e.	sedil-ia.
Abl.	i.	ibus.	*Abl.*	sedil-i.	sedil-ibus.

In the same way are declined,—

Monīle, monīlis, n., *a necklace.*
Animal, animālis, n., *an animal.*
Calcar, calcāris, n., *a spur.*
Altāre, altāris, n., *an altar.*
Vectīgal, vectīgālis, n., *a tax.*
Mare, maris, n., *the sea.*

Note 1.—Neuter Proper nouns in *e*; *sal*, salt; *far*, spelt; *hepar*, the liver; *jubar*, a sun-beam; and *nectar*, nectar, have *e* in the abl. sing. Thus, *Praeneste* (the name of a town); abl. *Praeneste*: *nectar*, *nectăris*, nectar; abl. *nectăre*.

Note 2.—*Rus*, *ruris*, the country, has *rure*, or *ruri* (always meaning *in the country*) in the abl. sing.; and *rura* in the nom., acc., and voc. plur.

Greek Nouns.

1. Greek nouns with a consonant before the termination of the genitive have *is* or *os* in the genit. sing., *em* or *a* in the acc. sing., and *es* or *as* in the acc. plur. Thus *lampas*, *lampădis*, f., a torch,

has gen. sing., *lampădis* or *lampădos*; acc. sing. *lampădem* or *lampăda*; acc. plur. *lampădes* or *lampădas*.

2. Greek Proper names, and *aër*, *aether*, *delphin*, and *Pan* have usually *a* instead of *em* in the acc. sing.

3. Greek nouns in *is* not increasing, and in *ys*, genit. *yos*, have *im* or *in* and *ym* or *yn* in the acc. sing., and *i* and *y* in the voc. sing. Thus *Neapŏlis*, *Neapŏlis*, Naples; acc. *Neapŏlim*, or *Neapŏlin*; voc. *Neapŏli*: *Halys*, *Halyos*, the Halys; acc. *Halym* or *Halyn*; voc. *Haly*.

4. Greek proper nouns in *eus* (pronounced as one syllable) are declined according to both the second and the third declensions. Thus—

Nom.	*Gen.*	*Dat.*	*Acc.*	*Voc.*	*Abl.*	
	-ĕi.	-ĕo.	-ĕum.	——	-ĕo	*2nd decl.*
Orph-eus.	-ĕos.	-ĕi.	-ĕa.	-eu.	——	*3rd decl.*

5. Greek feminines in *o* are declined thus:—

Nom.	*Gen.*	*Dat.*	*Acc.*	*Voc.*	*Abl.*
Dido.	Didūs.	Dido.	Dido.	Dido.	Dido.

6. Greek proper nouns in *es* have sometimes in the genit. sing. *i*, *ei*, or *ei*, instead of *is*. Thus *Ulixes*, Ulysses, genit. *Ulixis*, *Ulixi*, *Ulixēi* and *Ulixei*.

Note.—Greek proper nouns in *as*, *antis*, form the voc. by dropping *s* of the nom., and sometimes also those in *es*, gen. *-is*, and in *ys*, gen. *-ydis*, as *Calchas*, *Calchantis*, voc. *Calcha*; *Socrăt-es*, *-is*, voc. *Socrate*, more frequently, *Socrates*; *Paris*, *Pări-dis*, or *-dos*, voc. *Pari*, or *Paris*.

RULES FOR GENDER.—1. The terminations, *o*, *n*, *er*, *or*, and *os* are masculine: but *io*, *do*, and *go* are feminine; and *men* is neuter.

EXCEPTIONS.—(See App. A. I. 2, 3.)

In *o*.

fem.: car-o, -nis, *flesh*; ech-o, -ūs, *an echo*.

In *er*.

neut.: cadāv-er, -ĕris, *a carcase*; iter, itinĕris, *a journey*; ver, veris, *spring*; (verb-er, ĕris), *a whip*.

In *or*.

arb-or, -ŏris, *a tree*, *fem.*

neut.: ad-or, -ŏris, *fine flour*; aequ-or, -ŏris, *the calm sea*; cor, cordis, *the heart*; marm-or, -ŏris, *marble*.

In *os*.

fem.: cos, cotis, *a whetstone*; dos, dotis, *a dowry*.

neut.: os, oris, *the mouth*; os, ossis, *a bone*.

In *io*, *do*, and *go*.

masc.: pugi-o, -ōnis, *a dagger*; scipi-o, -ōnis, *a staff*; septemtri-o, -ōnis, *the north*; titi-o, -ōnis, *a firebrand*; card-o, -ĭnis, *a hinge*; ord-o, -ĭnis, *a rank*; harpăg-o, -ōnis, *a grapple*; lig-o, -ōnis, *a spade*; marg-o, -ĭnis, *a margin*.

2. The terminations, *s* (preceded by a consonant), *x*, *as*, *es*, and *is*, are feminine: but polysyllables in *ax* and *ex*, and *nis* not increasing in the genitive, are masculine.

EXCEPTIONS.—(See App. A. I. 4, *b*, 6.)

In *s*, prec. by a cons.

dens, dentis, *a tooth*,
fons, fontis, *a fountain*,
mons, montis, *a mountain*,
pons, pontis, *a bridge*,
} *masc.*

Monos. in *ex*.

grex, gregis, *a flock*, *masc.*

In *as*.

as, assis, *a penny*,
vas, vadis, *a surety*,
} *masc.*
vas, vasis, *a vessel*, *neut.*

In *es*.

cesp-es, -ĭtis, *turf*,
gurg-es, -ĭtis, *a whirlpool*,
lim-es, -ĭtis, *a boundary*,
pari-es, -ĕtis, *a wall*,
pes, pedis, *a foot*,
stip-es, -ĭtis, *a stake*,
} *masc.*
aes, aeris, *copper*, *neut.*

In *is*.

ax-is, -is, *an axle*,
coll-is, -is, *a hill*,
ens-is, -is, *a sword*,
fasc-is, -is, *a bundle*,
fust-is, -is, *a cudgel*,
lap-is, -ĭdis, *a stone*,
mens-is, -is, *a month*,
orb-is, -is, *a circle*,
post-is, -is, *a door post*,
sangu-is, -ĭnis, *blood*,
ungu-is, -is, *a nail*, *a claw*,
vect-is, -is, *a lever*,
vom-is, -ĕris, *a ploughshare*,
} *masc.*

cin-is, -ĕris, *ashes*,
pulv-is, -ĕris, *dust*,
torqu-is, -is, *a collar*,
} *usually masc.*

Polys. in *ex*.

supell-ex, -ectĭlis, *furniture*, *fem.*

3. The terminations, *a*, *e*, *i*, *y*, *c*, *l*, *t*, *ar*, *ur*, and *us*, are neuter.

EXCEPTIONS—(See App. A. I. 7.)

In *l*.

sol, solis, *the sun*, *masc.*
sal, salis, *salt*, *generally masc.*

In *us*.

fraus, fraudis, *fraud*,
laus, laudis, *praise*,
inc-us, -ūdis, *an anvil*,
juvent-us, -ūtis, *youth*,
} *fem.*

pal-us, ūdis, *a marsh*,
pec-us, -ūdis, *a beast*,
sal-us, -ūtis, *safety*,
senect-us, -ūtis, *old age*,
servĭt-us, -ūtis, *slavery*,
tell-us, -ūris, *the earth*,
virt-us, -ūtis, *bravery*,
} *fem.*

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the Fourth Declension end in *us* and *u*.

NOUNS *in* US.

Case endings.	Sing.	Plur.	Fructus, m., *fruit.*	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	ŭs.	ūs.	*Nom.*	fruct-ŭs.	fruct-ūs.
Gen.	ūs.	ŭum.	*Gen.*	fruct-ūs.	fruct-ŭum.
Dat.	ŭi.	ĭbus.	*Dat.*	fruct-ŭi.	fruct-ĭbus.
Acc.	um.	ūs.	*Acc.*	fruct-um.	fruct-ūs.
Voc.	ŭs.	ūs	*Voc.*	fruct-ŭs.	fruct-ūs.
Abl.	ū.	ĭbus.	*Abl.*	fruct-ū.	fruct-ĭbus.

In the same way are declined,—

Exercĭtus, m., *an army.* | Manus, *f*., *a hand.* | Portĭcus, *f.*, *a portico.*
Magistrātus, m., *a magistrate.* | Casus, m., *a chance.* | Anus, *f.*, *an old woman.*

NOUNS *in* U.

Case endings.	Sing.	Plur.	Cornu, n., *a horn.*	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	u.	ūa.	*Nom.*	corn-u.	corn-ūa.
Gen.	ūs *or* u.	ŭum.	*Gen.*	corn-ūs *or* u.	corn-ŭum.
Dat.	u.	ĭbus.	*Dat.*	corn-u.	corn-ĭbus.
Acc.	u.	ūa.	*Acc.*	corn-u.	corn-ūa.
Voc.	u.	ūa.	*Voc.*	corn-u.	corn-ūa.
Abl.	u.	ĭbus.	*Abl.*	corn-u.	corn-ĭbus.

In the same way are declined,—

Tonĭtru, n., *thunder.* Veru, n., *a spit.*

Note.—Nouns of the Fourth Declension were originally declined according to the Third. Thus gen. sing. *ŭis*, contr. *ūs*; dat. *ŭi*, contr. *ū* always in nouns in *u*, and sometimes in nouns in *ŭs*; acc. *uem*, contr. *um*; abl. *ue*, contr. *ū*; nom., acc., and voc. plur. *ŭes*, contr. *ūs*.

Acus, a needle; *arcus*, a bow; *artus*, a joint; *lacus*, a lake; *partus*, a birth; *pecu*, cattle; *specus*, a den; and *tribus*, a tribe, have *ŭbus* in the dative and ablative plural. *Genu*, the knee; *portus*, a harbour; and *veru*, a spit, have both *ĭbus* and *ŭbus*. (See App. A. II. 3.)

Domus, f., a house, is declined partly like the Fourth, partly like the Second Declension.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	dom-ūs.	dom-ūs.
Gen.	dom-ūs (dom-ī *at home*).	dom-ūum *or* dom-ōrum.
Dat.	dom-uī (*rarely* -o).	dom-ĭbus.
Acc.	dom-um.	dom-os (*rarely* -ūs).
Voc.	dom-ūs.	dom-ūs.
Abl.	dom-o (*rarely* -u).	dom-ĭbus.

Iēsus, Jesus, has *u* in all cases except the accusative.
Nom., **Iēsus**; *gen.*, **Iēsu**; *dat.*, **Iēsu**; *acc.*, **Iēsum**; *voc.*, **Iēsu**; *abl.*, **Iēsu**.

Rule for Gender.—Nouns in *us* of the Fourth Declension are masculine; nouns in *u* are neuter.

But *acus*, a needle; *domus*, a house; *tribus*, a tribe; *manus*, a hand; *īdus*, *pl.* the ides; and *porticus*, a portico, are feminine. (See App. A. I. 8.)

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the Fifth Declension end in *es*.

Case endings.			Dies, m. or f., *a day*.		
	Sing.	Plur.		Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	ēs.	ēs.	*Nom.*	di-ēs.	di-ēs.
Gen.	ēi.*	ērum.	*Gen.*	di-ēi.	di-ērum.
Dat.	ēi.	ēbus.	*Dat.*	di-ēi.	di-ēbus.
Acc.	em.	ēs.	*Acc.*	di-em.	di-ēs.
Voc.	ēs.	ēs.	*Voc.*	di-ēs.	di-ēs.
Abl.	ē.	ēbus.	*Abl.*	di-ē.	di-ēbus.

Dies, a day, and *res*, a thing, are the only complete Nouns of this declension.

These eight—*acies*, *effigies*, *facies*, *glacies*, *progenies*, *series*, *species* and *spes*—have only the nom. and acc. in the plural. All others want the plural.

* The termination, *ēi*, in the gen. and dat. sing., has *e* long, when a vowel precedes; *e* doubtful, when a consonant precedes. Thus *dies*, gen. *diēi*; *fides*, gen, *fidēi* or *fidei*.

All the nouns of this declension end in *ies*, except *fides* and *spes*; and all nouns in *ies* are of this declension, except *abies*, a fir-tree, *aries*, a ram, *paries*, a wall, and *quies*, rest, which are of the third declension.

RULE FOR GENDER.—All nouns of the Fifth Declension are feminine, except *dies*, a day, masc. or fem. in the singular, and always masc. in the plural, and *meridies*, midday, always masc.

Table of regular Case Endings in the five Declensions—

I. Decl.	II. Decl.		III. Decl.		IV. Decl.		V. Decl.
Masculine or *Feminine.*	*Masculine* or *Feminine.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.* or *Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.* or *Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.* or *Fem.*
SING.	SING.	SING.	SING.	SING.	SING.	SING.	SING.
N. a	*stem*, or ŭs	um	*various*	*various*	ūs	u	ēs
G. ae	i	i	ĭs	ĭs	ūs	ūs or u	eī
D. ae	o	o	i	i	ŭi	u	eī
A. am	um	um	em	*like N.*	um	u	em
V. a	*stem*, or e	um	*like N.*	*like N.*	ŭs	u	ēs
A. a	o	o	e	e	u	u	e
PLUR.	PLUR.	PLUR.	PLUR.	PLUR.	PLUR.	PLUR.	PLUR.
N. ae	i	a	ēs	a	ūs	ŭa	ēs
G. ārum	ōrum	ōrum	um	um	ŭum	ŭum	ērum
D. īs	īs	īs	ĭbus	ĭbus	ĭbus	ĭbus	ēbus
A. ās	ōs	a	ēs	a	ūs	ŭa	ēs
V. ae	i	a	ēs	a	ūs	ŭa	ēs
A. īs	īs	īs	ĭbus	ĭbus	ĭbus	ĭbus	ēbus

COMPOUND NOUNS.

1. When a noun is compounded of two nominative cases, both are declined.

Thus, *respublica*, the republic, (compounded of *res*, 5th decl., and *publica*, 1st decl.); gen., *reipublicae*; dat., *reipublicae*; n. pl., *respublicae*, &c.: *jusjurandum*, an oath, (compounded of *jus*, 3rd decl., and *jurandum*, 2nd decl.); gen., *juris jurandi*; dat., *juri jurando*, &c.; no plural.

2. When a noun is compounded of a nominative and any other case, the nominative alone is declined.

Thus, *paterfamĭlias*, the head of a family, (compounded of *pater*, nom., and *familias*, old genit. for *familiae*) ; gen. *patrisfamĭlias* ; dat. *patrifamĭlias* ; n. pl. *patresfamĭlias*, &c. : *jurisconsultus*, a lawyer, (compounded of *juris*, gen., and *consultus*, nom.) ; gen. *jurisconsulti* ; dat. *jurisconsulto* ; n. pl. *jurisconsulti*, &c.

DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

1. *Wanting the Plural.*

(*a*). Abstract nouns, as *quies*, rest, *senectus*, old age, *libertas*, liberty.

(*b*). Proper nouns usually, as *Italia*, *Roma*, *Romulus*.

(*c*). Names of substances, as *aurum*, gold, *lac*, milk, *apium*, parsley.

(*d*). The following nouns :—

aevum, *time.*
fama, *report.*
jubar, *a sunbeam.*
jusjurandum, *an oath.*
plebs, *the commons.*
pontus, *the sea.*
supellex, *furniture.*
venia, *pardon.*
ver, *the spring.*
virus, *poison.*
vulgus, *the rabble.*

2. *Wanting the Singular.*

(*a*). Many names of Cities and Festivals, as *Athenae*, Athens, *Syracusae*, Syracuse, *Saturnalia*, the festival of Saturn.

(*b*). The following nouns :—

angustiae, *a defile.*
arma, *arms.*
bigae, quadrĭgae, *a two, a four horse chariot.*
calendae, *the first day of the month.*
cunabŭla, cunae, } *a cradle.*
deliciae, *darling.*
divitiae, *riches.*
excubiae, *the watch.*
exsequiae, *funeral solemnities.*
exta, *entrails.*
exuviae, *spoils.*
fasti, *a calendar.*
feriae, *a holyday.*
grates, *thanks.*
habēnae, *reins.*
idūs, *the ides.*
incunabŭla, *a cradle.*
inducĭae, *a truce.*
inimicitiae, *enmity.*
insidiae, *an ambuscade.*
libĕri, *children.*
majōres, *ancestors.*
manes, *departed spirits.*
manubiae, *spoils.*
minae, *threats.*
minōres, *posterity.*
munia, *duties.*
nonae, *the nones.*
nugae, *trifles.*
nuptiae, *nuptials.*
postĕri, *posterity.*
relliquiae, *remains.*
salīnae, *a salt-work.*
scalae, *a stair, a ladder.*
tenĕbrae, *darkness.*
verbĕra, *lashes* (*abl. sing.*, verbere).

3. *Having only two Cases.*

fas, *right*, nom. and acc.
fors, *chance*, nom.; forte, abl.
instar, *equality*, nom. and acc.
necesse, *necessity*, nom. and acc.
nefas, *wrong*, nom. and acc.
nihil, *nothing*, nom. and acc.
opus, *need*, nom. and acc.
repetundarum, *money got by extortion*, gen. pl.; repetundis, abl. pl.
spontis, *inclination*, gen.; sponte, abl.

4. *Having only one Case.*

admonitu, *by advice*, abl.
derisui, *for derision*, dat.
despicatui, *for contempt*, dat.
diu, *by day*, abl.
infitias, *denial*, acc. pl.
injussu, *without orders*, abl.
jussu, *by command*, abl.
mandātu, *by order*, abl.
monĭtu, *by advice*, abl.
natu, *by birth*, abl.
noctu, *by night*, abl.
pondo, *in weight*, abl.
promptu, *in readiness*, abl.
rogātu, *by request*, abl.
venum, *for sale*, acc.

5. *More or less Defective.*

dapis, *food*, } want
frugis, *fruit*, } nom. sing.

fax, *a torch*,
lux, *light*,
os, oris, *mouth*,
proles, *progeny*,
sol, *the sun*,
} want gen. plur.

ditionis, *dominion*,
interneciōnis, *utter destruction*,
} want nom. sing. and all the plur.

far, *spelt*,
hiems, *winter*,
mel, *honey*,
metus, *fear*,
rus, *the country*,
} want gen., dat., and abl. plur.

chaos, *chaos*, wants gen. sing. and all the plural.
grates, *thanks*, acc., has also dat. and abl. plur.
mane, *morning*, (nom., acc., and) abl.
lues, *an epidemic*, nom.; luem, acc.; lue, abl.; plur. wanting.
nemo, *nobody*, nom.; gen. rare; voc. wanting; abl. rare; plur. wanting.
opis, *help*, gen.; opem, acc.; ope, abl.; plur. complete, opes, opum, opibus, &c.
preci, *prayer*, dat.: precem, acc.; prece, abl.; plur. complete, preces, precum, precibus, &c.
sordis, *dirt*, gen.; sordem, acc.; sorde, abl.; plur. complete.
vesper, *evening*, nom.; vesperum, acc.; vespere, -i, and -o, abl.
vespĕra, *evening*, nom.; vesperam, acc.; vespera, abl., rare.
vicis, *change*, gen.; vicem, acc.; vice, abl.; gen. plur. wanting.
vis, *force*, nom.; vim, acc.; vi, abl.; plur. complete, vires, virium, viribus, &c.

VARIABLE NOUNS.

1. *Varying in Form.*

Singular.	*Plural.*
Avernus, m., *the Avernan lake.* . .	Avern-a, -orum, n.
Pergămus, f., *the citadel of Troy.* .	Pergam-a, -orum, n.
Tartărus, m., *Tartarus.*	Tartar-a, -orum, n.

(and many other proper nouns in *us*.)

Singular.	*Plural.*
Argos, n., *Argos*, only nom. and acc.	Arg-i, -orum, m.
coelum, n., *heaven*.	coel-i, -orum, m.
epŭlum, n., *a public feast*. . . .	epul-ae, -arum, *f.*, *a feast*.
frenum, n., *a bridle*.	freni, m., and frena, n.
jocus, m., *a jest*.	joci, m., and joca, n.
jugĕrum, n., *an acre*.	juger-a, -um, -ibus, &c.
Hierosolўma, -ae, *f.*, *Jerusalem*. .	Hierosolym-a, -orum, n.
locus, m., *a place*.	loci, m., *passages in a book*; loca, n., *places*.
nundĭnum, n., *a market*.	nundinae, *f.*, *market day*.
rastrum, *a rake*.	rastri, m., and rastra, n.
vas, vasis, *a vessel*.	vas-a, -orum, n.

2. *Varying in Signification.*

Singular.	*Plural.*
aedes, *a temple*.	aedes, *temples*, or *a house*.
aqua, *water*.	aquae, *medicinal springs*.
auxilium, *assistance*.	auxilia, *auxiliaries*.
bonum, *a good, a blessing*. . . .	bona, *goods, property*.
carcer, *a prison*.	carcĕres, *a starting-post*.
(castrum), *a fort*.	castra, *a camp*.
comitium, *the place where the people met at Rome*.	comitia, *a meeting of the people*.
copia, *plenty*.	copiae, *forces*.
facultas, *power, ability*. . . .	facultates, *means, property*.
finis, *an end*.	fines, *boundaries, territory*.
fortuna, *fortune*.	fortunae, *possessions*.
gratia, *favour*.	gratiae, *thanks*.
impedimentum, *a hindrance*. . .	impedimenta, *hindrances*, or *baggage*.
litera, *a letter of the alphabet*. .	literae, *letters of the alphabet, an epistle, literature*.
lustrum, *the lustral sacrifice, a period of five years*.	lustra, *a haunt of wild beasts*.
natālis, *a birth-day*.	natales, *pedigree*.
opera, *work, exertion*.	operae, *workmen*.
opis, gen., *help*.	opes, *resources, influence*.
pars, *a part*.	partes, *parts*, or *a party*.
rostrum, *a beak*.	rostra, *beaks*, or *the orators' pulpit*.
sal, *salt*.	sales, *witticisms*.
tabŭla, *a board, a tablet*. . . .	tabulae, *boards*, or *an account book*.
vita, *life*.	vitae, *biographies*.

CHAPTER III.—ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives are either of the First and Second Declension, or of the Third only.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

Adjectives of the First and Second Declension have their Masculine in *us* or *er*,* their Feminine in *a*, and their Neuter in *um*.

The masculine is declined like *ventus*, *puer*, or *aper*, the feminine like *mensa*, and the neuter like *donum*.

	Bonus, m.	**Bona**, *f.*	**Bonum**, n., *good.*
	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
N.	bon-us.	bon-a.	bon-um.
G.	bon-i.	-ae.	-i.
D.	bon-o.	-ae.	-o.
A.	bon-um.	-am.	-um.
V.	bon-e.	-a.	-um.
A.	bon-o.	-a.	-o.

	Bonus, m.	**Bona**, *f.*	**Bonum**, n., *good.*
	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
N.	bon-i.	-ae.	-a.
G.	bon-orum.	-arum.	-orum.
D.	bon-is.	-is.	-is.
A.	bon-os.	-as.	-a.
V.	bon-i.	-ae.	-a.
A.	bon-is.	-is.	-is.

	Tener, m.	**Tenĕra**, f.	**Tenĕrum**, n., *tender.*
	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
N.	tener.	tener-a.	tener-um.
G.	tener-i.	-ae.	-i.
D.	tener-o.	-ae.	-o.
A.	tener-um.	-am.	-um.
V.	tener.	-a.	-um.
A.	tener-o.	-a.	-o.

	Tener, m.	**Tenĕra**, f.	**Tenĕrum**, n., *tender.*
	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
N.	tener-i.	-ae.	-a.
G.	tener-orum.	-arum.	-orum.
D.	tener-is.	-is.	-is.
A.	tener os.	-as.	-a.
V.	tener-i.	-ae.	-a.
A.	tener-is.	-is.	-is.

All adjectives in *er* of the first and second declension, except *asper*, *exter*, *lacer*, *miser*, *prosper*, *tener*, the compounds

* There is only one adjective in *ur*, satur, m.; satŭra, *f.*; satŭrum, n., *full.*

of *gero* and *fero*, and, rarely, *dexter*, drop *e* before *r* in the inflexion. (See App. A. II. 4.)

	Ater, m.	**Atra**, *f.*	**Atrum**, n., *black.*	
	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
N.	ater.	atr-a.	atr-um.	*N.* atr-i.	-ae.	-a.
G.	atr-i.	-ae.	-i.	*G.* atr-orum.	-arum.	-orum.
		&c.			&c.	

ADJECTIVES TO BE DECLINED.

like *bonus.*	like *tener.*	like *ater.*
carus, *dear.*	asper, *rough.*	noster, *our.*
carissimus, *dearest.*	liber, *free.*	niger, *black.*
varius, *various.*	miser, *wretched.*	pulcher, *fair.*
doctus, *learned.*	prosper, *prosperous.*	integer, *entire.*
aequus, *equal.*	pestifer, *destructive.*	piger, *sluggish.*

Irregular Adjectives in us *and* er.

Unus, *uter*, *neuter*, *solus*, *ullus*, *alter*, *alius*, *totus*, and *nullus* have *ius* in all genders of the genitive singular, and *i* in all genders of the dative singular. *Alius* has *aliud* in the neuter. (See App. A. II. 5.)

Note.—Genitives in *ius* have *i* long in prose, but long or short in poetry; but *alius* has *i* of the gen. always long, and *alter* has it usually short.

Ullus, *any.*			**Alter**, *other (of two).*		
SINGULAR.			SINGULAR.		
Nom. ullus.	ulla.	ullum.	*Nom.* alter.	altera.	alterum.
Gen. ullius.	ullius.	ullius.	*Gen.* alterius.	alterius.	alterius.
Dat. ulli.	ulli.	ulli.	*Dat.* altĕri.	altĕri.	altĕri.
The rest like *bonus.*			The rest like *tener.*		

Uter, *which (of two).*			**Alius**, *other.*		
SINGULAR.			SINGULAR.		
Nom. uter.	utra.	utrum.	*Nom.* alius.	alia.	aliud.
Gen. utrius.	utrius.	utrius.	*Gen.* alius.	alius.	alius.
Dat. utri.	utri.	utri.	*Dat.* alii.	alii.	alii.
The rest like *ater*			&c.	&c.	

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Adjectives of the Third Declension have, in the nominative singular,

(1). One termination, as felix, *m.*, felix, *f.*, felix, *n.*
(2). Two terminations, as brevis, *m.*, brevis, *f.*, breve, *n.*
(3). Three terminations, as acer, *m.*, acris, *f.*, acre, *n.*

RULE 1.—Adjectives of one termination have *e* or *i* in the ablative singular. Adjectives of two or three terminations have *i* only.

Note 1.—In adjectives of one termination, *i* is the common form, except in the *ablative absolute*, when *e* is always used.

Note 2.—Comparatives, which are of two terminations, have sometimes *i* as well as *e*.

RULE 2.—The genitive plural ends in *ium* and the neuter of the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural in *ia*, except in comparatives and *vetus*, ancient, which require *um* and *a*.

	Felix, m.	**Felix**, f.	**Felix**, n., *happy*.		
	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.		
N.	felix.	felix.	felix.	*N.* felic-es.	-es. -ia.
G.	felic-is.	-is.	-is.	*G.* felic-ium.	-ium. -ium.
D.	felic-i.	-i.	-i.	*D.* felic-ibus.	-ibus. -ibus.
A.	felic-em.	-em.	felix.	*A.* felic-es.	-es. -ia.
V.	felix.	felix.	felix.	*V.* felic-es.	-es. -ia.
A.	felic-e *or* -i.	-e *or* i.	-e *or* -i.	*A.* felic-ibus.	-ibus. -ibus.

In the same way are declined,—

audax, audācis, *bold*. prudens, prudentis, *prudent*.
ferox, ferōcis, *fierce*. amans, amantis, *loving*.
simplex, simplĭcis, *simple*. sapiens, sapientis, *wise*.

	Brevis, m.	**Brevis**, f.	**Breve**, n., *short*.		
	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.		
N.	brev-is.	brev-is.	brev-e.	*N.* brev-es.	-es. -ia
G.	brev-is.	-is.	-is.	*G.* brev-ium.	-ium. -ium.
D.	brev-i.	-i.	-i.	*D.* brev-ibus.	-ibus. -ibus.
A.	brev-em.	-em.	-e.	*A.* brev-es.	-es. -ia.
V.	brev-is.	-is.	-e.	*V.* brev-es.	-es. -ia.
A.	brev-i.	-i.	-i.	*A.* brev-ibus.	-ibus. -ibus.

In the same way are declined,—

levis, *light*.	immānis, *huge*.	fortis, *brave*.
facilis, *easy*.	lenis, *gentle*.	similis, *like*.

	Celĕber, m.	Celĕbris, f.	Celĕbre, n., *famous*.		
	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
N.	celeber.*	celebris.	celebre.	celebr-es.	-es.	-ia.
G.	celebr-is.	-is.	-is.	celebr-ium.	-ium.	-ium.
D.	celebr-i.	-i.	-i.	celebr-ibus.	-ibus.	-ibus.
A.	celebr-em.	-em.	-e.	celebr-es.	-es.	-ia.
V.	celeber.	celebris.	celebre.	celebr-es.	-es.	-ia.
A.	celebr-i.	-i.	-i.	celebr-ibus.	-ibus.	-ibus.

There are only thirteen adjectives in *er* of the third declension. (See App. A. II. 8.)

acer, *keen*.	equester, *equestrian*.	salŭber, *wholesome*.
ălăcer, *active*.	paluster, *marshy*.	silvester, *woody*.
campester, *level*.	pedester, *pedestrian*.	terrester, *terrestrial*.
celĕber, *famous*.	puter, *rotten*.	volŭcer, *winged*.*
celer, *swift*.		

Names of months in *er*, which are properly adjectives, all belong to this declension, as *September*, gen. *Septembris*, abl. *Septembri*, ab. pl. *Septembribus*, &c.

	Brevior, m.	Brevior, f.	Brevius, n., *shorter*—COMPARATIVE.
		SINGULAR.	
Nom.	brevior.	brevior.	brevius.
Gen.	brevĭōr-is.	brevĭōr-is.	brevĭōr-is.
Dat.	brevĭōr-i.	brevĭōr-i.	brevĭōr-i.
Acc.	brevĭōr-em.	brevĭōr-em.	brevius.
Voc.	brevior.	brevior.	brevius.
Abl.	brevĭōr-e (*or* -i).	brevĭōr-e (*or* -i).	brevĭōr-e (*or* -i).
		PLURAL.	
Nom.	brevĭōr-es.	brevĭōr-es.	brevĭōr-a.
Gen.	brevĭōr-um.	brevĭōr-um.	brevĭōr-um.
Dat.	brevĭōr-ibus.	brevĭōr-ibus.	brevĭōr-ibus.
Acc.	brevĭōr-es.	brevĭōr-es.	brevĭōr-a.
Voc.	brevĭōr-es.	brevĭōr-es.	brevĭōr-a.
Abl.	brevĭōr-ibus.	brevĭōr-ibus.	brevĭōr-ibus.

* The nom. and voc. sing. masc. are sometimes the same as the feminine.

In the same way are declined,—

levior, *lighter.*	acrior, *keener.*	asperior, *rougher.*
similior, *liker.*	fortior, *braver.*	pulchrior, *fairer.*

EXCEPTION 1.—The following adjectives, which, however, are mostly used as nouns, have *e* only in the ablative singular. (See App. A. II. 6.)

al-es, -ĭtis, *winged.*	juvĕn-is, -is, *young.*
comp-os, -ŏtis, *possessed of.*	sen-ex, -is, *old.*
imp-os, -ŏtis, *void of.*	sosp-es, ĭtis, *safe.*
hosp-es, -ĭtis, *strange.*	superst-es, -ĭtis, *surviving;* and the compounds of *pes* and *corpus.*

2.—These adjectives of one termination, *par*, *memor*, and *ingens*, have *i* only in the ablative singular.

3.—These adjectives have *um* instead of *ium* in the genit. plur. (See App. A. II. 7.)

celer, *swift.*	gen. pl. celĕrum.		praeps, *fleet.*	gen. pl.	praepĕtum.
consors, *sharing.*	,,	consortum.	supplex, *suppliant.*	,,	supplĭcum.
dives, *rich.*	,,	divĭtum.	uber, *fertile.*	,,	ubĕrum.
inops, *poor.*	,,	inŏpum.	vigil, *watchful.*	,,	vigĭlum.
memor, *mindful.*	,,	memŏrum.			

Also the compounds of *capio*, *facio*, *caput*, and *genus*, as *particeps*, partaking, gen. pl. *participum.*

4.—The comparative, *Plus*, more, and its compound, *complūres*, several, have *ium* in the genitive plural.

Plus, more, is declined thus—

	Singular.			Plural.			
Nom.	——	——	plus.	*Nom.*	plur-es.	-es.	-a.
Gen.	——	——	pluris.	*Gen.*	plur-ium.	-ium.	-ium.
Dat.	——	——	——	*Dat.*	plur-ibus.	-ibus.	-ibus.
Acc.	——	——	plus.	*Acc.*	plur-es.	-es.	-a.
Voc.	——	——	——	*Voc.*	plur-es.	-es.	-a.
Abl.	——	——	——	*Abl.*	plur-ibus.	-ibus.	-ibus.

Adjectives used as Nouns.

Adjectives used as nouns have *e* only in the ablative singular; but, if the neuter would end in *e*, the ablative has *i* only, except in names of persons.

Thus, *princeps*, a chief, abl. *principe* only, *Felix* (a man's name), abl. *Felice* only; *September*, September, which is properly the masc. of an adjec-

tive having the neut. *Septembre*, abl. *Septembri*, and so with other names of months of the 3rd decl., as *Aprilis*, April, abl. *Aprili;* but *Juvenālis* (neut. *Juvenale*), abl. *Juvenāle*, when it is the name of a person.

Exc.—*Præceps*, a precipice, and *præsens*, the present time, have *i* in the ablative singular.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

There are three Degrees of Comparison, the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

The Comparative is always of the third declension, the Superlative always of the first and second.

The Comparative is formed by adding *ĭor*, and the Superlative by adding *issĭmus*, to the stem of the Positive.

Pos.	*Gen. Masc.*	*Comp.*	*Super.*
durus, *hard.*	dur-i.	dur-ior.	dur-issimus.
sapiens, *wise.*	sapient-is.	sapient-ior.	sapient-issimus.
tenŭis, *thin.*	tenu-is.	tenu-ior.	tenu-issimus.

In the same way are compared,—

amplus, ampl-i, *large.*
æquus, æqu-i, *just.*
brevis, brev-is, *short.*
utilis, util-is, *useful.*
amabĭlis, amabĭl-is, *lovely.*
elŏquens, eloquent-is, *eloquent.*
ferox, ferōc-is, *fierce.*
locŭples, locuplēt-is, *rich.*

If the Positive ends in *er*, the Superlative is formed by adding *rĭmus* to the nominative singular masculine.

P.	*C.*	*S.*
tener, tener-i, *tender.*	tener-ior.	tener-rĭmus.
niger, nigr-i, *black.*	nigr-ior.	niger-rĭmus.
pauper, paupĕr-is, *poor.*	pauper-ior.	pauper-rĭmus.

In the same way are compared,—

asper, aspĕr-i, *rough.*
creber, crebr-i, *frequent.*
celer, celĕr-is, *swift.*
acer, acr-is, *keen.*

Facĭlis, easy; *gracĭlis*, slender; *humĭlis*, low; *similis*, like; and their compounds, form the Superlative by adding *lĭmus* to the stem of the Positive.

P.	*C.*	*S.*
facilis, facil-is.	facil-ior.	facil-lĭmus,
difficilis, difficil-is.	difficil-ior.	difficil-lĭmus.

Imbecillus or *-is*, weak, has both *imbecillissimus* and *imbecillimus*.

Verbal adjectives in *-dĭcus*, *-fĭcus*, and *-vŏlus*, and also *providus*, provident, form the Comparative and Superlative by adding *entior* and *entissimus* to the stem of the Positive.

P.	*C.*	*S.*
maledĭcus, *slanderous.*	maledic-entior.	maledic-entissimus.
malefĭcus, *mischievous.*	malefic-entior.	malefic-entissimus.
malevŏlus, *malevolent.*	malevol-entior.	malevol-entissimus.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

bonus, *good.*	melior, *better.*	optĭmus, *best.*
malus, *bad.*	pejor, *worse.*	pessĭmus, *worst.*
parvus, *little.*	minor, *less.*	minĭmus, *least.*
magnus, *great.*	major, *greater.*	maxĭmus, *greatest.*
multus, *much.*	plus, n., *more.*	plurĭmus, } *most.*
multi, *many.*	plures, *more.*	plurimi, }
(supĕrus),* *above.*	superior, *higher.*	summus, *highest.* suprēmus, *last (in time).*
(infĕrus),* *below.*	inferior, *lower.*	infĭmus, } *lowest.* imus, }
(postĕrus),* *behind.*	posterior, *hinder.*	postrēmus, *last.* postŭmus, *posthumous.*
(extĕrus),* *outside.*	exterior, *outer.*	extrēmus, *utmost.*
dexter, *to the right.*	dexterior, *more &c.*	dextĭmus, *most &c.*
egēnus, *needy.*	egentior, *more &c.*	egentissimus, *most &c.*
nequam, ind. *worthless.*	nequior, *more &c.*	nequissimus, *most &c.*

DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

When an adjective wants the Comparative or Superlative, *magis*, more, is prefixed to the Positive to form the Comparative, and *maxime*, most, or *admŏdum* or *valde*, very, to form the Superlative.

P. idoneus, *fit.* *C.* magis idoneus, *fitter.* *S.* maxime idoneus, *fittest.*; admodum idoneus, } *very fit.*; valde idoneus, }

Wanting the Positive.

C.	*S.*
citerior, *hither.*	citĭmus, *hithermost.*
deterior, *worse.*	deterrimus, *worst.*
interior, *inner.*	intĭmus, *inmost.*
ocior, *swifter.*	ocissimus, *swiftest.*
prior, *former.*	primus, *first.*
propior, *nearer.*	proxĭmus, *nearest.*
ulterior, *further.*	ultĭmus, *furthest*, or *last.*

* These Positives are found only in certain parts; the nom. sing. masc. is not found.

Wanting the Comparative.

P.	*C.*	*S.*
falsus, *false.*	——	falsissimus, *most false.*
inclȳtus, *famous.*	——	inclytissimus, *most famous.*
invictus, *invincible.*	——	invictissimus, *most invincible.*
meritus, *deserving.*	——	meritissimus, *most deserving.*
novus, *new.*	——	novissimus, *newest*, or *last.*
par, *equal.*	——	parissimus, *most equal.*
persuāsus, *persuaded.*	——	persuasissimus, *most &c.*
sacer, *sacred.*	——	sacerrimus, *most sacred.*
vetus, *ancient.*	——	veterrimus, *most ancient.*

Wanting the Superlative.

(*a*). Most adjectives in *ālis*, *īlis*, and *bilis*, want the Superlative; but *hospitālis*, hospitable; *liberālis*, liberal; *civīlis*, civil; *amabilis*, lovely; and *nobilis*, noble, have both Comparative and Superlative.

(*b*). The following adjectives want the Superlative.

P.	*C.*	*S.*
adolescens, *young.*	adolescentior.	——
alăcer, *active.*	alacrior.	——
arcānus, *secret.*	arcanior.	——
ater, *black.*	atrior.	——
caecus, *blind.*	caecior.	——
concinnus, *neat.*	concinnior.	——
diuturnus, *lasting.*	diuturnior.	——
ingens, *vast.*	ingentior.	——
insignis, *famous.*	insignior.	——
juvenis, *young.*	junior.	——
longinquus, *distant.*	longinquior.	——
opīmus, *rich.*	opimior.	——
perennis, *lasting.*	perennior.	——
populāris, *popular.*	popularior.	——
proclīvis, *inclined.*	proclivior.	——
pronus, *prone.*	pronior.	——
propinquus, *near.*	propinquior.	——
satur, *full.*	saturior.	——
senex, *old.*	senior.	——
sublīmis, *lofty.*	sublimior.	——
vulgāris, *common.*	vulgarior.	——

Wanting the Positive and Superlative.

C. anterior, *former.* *C.* satior, *better.* *C.* sequior, *worse.*

Wanting the Comparative and Superlative.

(*a*). Most adjectives in *us*, preceded by a vowel, as *dubius*, doubtful, *idoneus*, fit. But if *qu* precedes, the comparison is complete, as *aequus*, just, C. *aequior*, S. *aequissimus*.

(*b*). Most adjectives ending in *entus*, *ĭcus*, *ĭlis*, *ĭmus*, *ĭnus*, *īvus*, *ōrus*, *ōsus*; verbal adjectives in *dus*; adjectives compounded of nouns or verbs; and many in *ālis*, *īlis*, and *bĭlis*: as *temulentus*, drunk, *modĭcus*, moderate, *decōrus*, becoming; *pavidus*, fearful; *degĕner*, degenerate, *inops*, needy, *consŏnus*, harmonious; *exitiālis*, destructive.

(*c*). Also the adjectives,—

aegrōtus, *sick.*	ferus, *wild.*	mirus, *wonderful.*
almus, *genial.*	insons, *innocent.*	rudis, *rude.*
curtus, *short.*	lassus, *weary.*	subĭtus, *sudden.*
curvus, *crooked.*	memor, *mindful.*	trux, *cruel.*

CHAPTER IV.—NUMERALS.

There are four principal classes of Numerals :—

1. Cardinals, expressing number, answering the question —how many?

2. Ordinals, expressing order, answering the question— which in order?

3. Distributives, expressing number taken at a time, or given to each.

4. Numeral adverbs, expressing number of times.

1. Cardinals.		2. Ordinals.	
unus	1	primus	1st
duo	2	secundus, *or* alter	2nd
tres	3	tertius	3rd
quatuor	4	quartus	4th
quinque	5	quintus	5th
sex	6	sextus	6th
septem	7	septĭmus	7th
octo	8	octāvus	8th
novem	9	nonus	9th
decem	10	decĭmus	10th

undĕcim	11	undecimus	11th
duodĕcim	12	duodecimus	12th
tredĕcim	13	tertius decimus	13th
quatuordĕcim	14	quartus decimus	14th
quindĕcim	15	quintus decimus	15th
sedĕcim	16	sextus decimus	16th
septendĕcim	17	septimus decimus	17th
duodeviginti	18	duodevigesimus	18th
undeviginti	19	undevigesimus	19th
viginti	20	vigesimus	20th
viginti unus	21	vigesimus primus	21st
triginta	30	trigesimus	30th
quadraginta	40	quadragesimus	40th
quinquaginta	50	quinquagesimus	50th
sexaginta	60	sexagesimus	60th
septuaginta	70	septuagesimus	70th
octoginta	80	octogesimus	80th
nonaginta	90	nonagesimus	90th
centum	100	centesimus	100th
ducenti	200	ducentesimus	200th
trecenti	300	trecentesimus	300th
quadringenti	400	quadringentesimus	400th
quingenti	500	quingentesimus	500th
sexcenti	600	sexcentesimus	600th
septingenti	700	septingentesimus	700th
octingenti	800	octingentesimus	800th
nongenti	900	nongentesimus	900th
mille *or* mile (adj. ind.)	1000	millesimus	1000th
duo millia	2000	bis millesimus	2000th
decem millia	10,000	decies millesimus	10,000th
centum millia	100,000	centies millesimus	100,000th
decies centena millia	1,000,000	decies centies millesimus	1,000,000th

The Romans used the following symbols, or a combination of them, to express numbers:—

I = 1	M, or CIↀ =	2 × 500 =	1,000
V = 5	Iↀↀ =	500 × 10 =	5,000
X = 10	CCIↀↀ =	2 × 500 × 10 =	10,000
L = 50	Iↀↀↀ =	500 × 10 × 10 =	50,000
C = 100	CCCIↀↀↀ =	2 × 50,000 =	100,000
D, or Iↀ = 500	CCCCIↀↀↀↀ =	2 × 500,000 =	1,000,000

Fractions are expressed in Latin just as in English, only that, when the numerator is 1, the numerator is not expressed, and, when the numerator is one less than the denominator, the denominator is not expressed. Thus *dimidia pars*, a-half; *septima pars*, one-seventh; *tres septimae partes*, three-sevenths; *septem partes*, seven-eighths; *tres partes*, three-fourths.

3. Distributives.		4. Numeral Adverbs.	
singŭli, one-by-one, one a-piece.	one each,	semel	once.
bini, two-by-two, a-piece.	two each, two	bis	twice.
terni	3 each, &c.	ter	thrice.
quaterni	4 each, &c.	quater	4 times.
quini	5 each, &c.	quinquies	5 „
seni	6 each, &c.	sexies	6 „
septēni	7 each, &c.	septies	7 „
octōni	8 each, &c.	octies	8 „
novēni	9 each, &c.	novies	9 „
deni	10 each, &c.	decies	10 „
undēni	11 each, &c.	undecies	11 „
duodēni	12 each, &c.	duodecies	12 „
terni deni	13 each, &c.	tredecies	13 „
quaterni deni	14 each, &c.	quaterdecies	14 „
quindeni	15 each, &c.	quindecies	15 „
seni deni	16 each, &c.	sedecies	16 „
septeni deni	17 each, &c.	septiesdecies	17 „
octoni deni, or duodeviceni	18 each, &c.	octiesdecies	18 „
noveni deni, or undeviceni	19 each, &c.	noviesdecies	19 „
vicēni	20 each, &c.	vicies	20 „
viceni singuli	21 each, &c.	semel et vicies	21 „
triceni	30 each, &c.	tricies	30 „
quadrageni	40 each, &c.	quadragies	40 „
quinquageni	50 each, &c.	quinquagies	50 „
sexageni	60 each, &c.	sexagies	60 „
septuageni	70 each, &c.	septuagies	70 „
octogeni	80 each, &c.	octogies	80 „
nonageni	90 each, &c.	nonagies	90 „
centeni	100 each, &c.	centies	100 „
duceni	200 each, &c.	ducenties	200 „
treceni	300 each, &c.	trecenties	300 „
quadringeni	400 each, &c.	quadringenties	400 „
quingeni	500 each, &c.	quingenties	500 „
sexceni	600 each, &c.	sexcenties	600 „
septingeni	700 each, &c.	septingenties	700 „
octingeni	800 each, &c.	octingenties	800 „
nongeni	900 each, &c.	nongenties	900 „
milleni	1000 each, &c.	millies	1000 „
bis milleni	2000 each, &c.	bis millies	2000 „
decies milleni	10,000 each, &c.	decies millies	10,000 „
centies milleni	100,000 each, &c.	centies millies	100,000 „
decies centies milleni	1,000,000 each, &c.	decies centies millies	1,000,000 „

Duo and **Tres** are declined thus :—

	Plural.				Plural.		
Nom.	duo.	duae.	duo.	*Nom.*	tres.	tres.	tria.
Gen.	duorum.	duarum.	duorum.	*Gen.*	trium.	trium.	trium.
Dat.	duōbus.	duābus.	duobus.	*Dat.*	tribus.	tribus.	tribus.
Acc.	duos *or* duo.	duas.	duo.	*Acc.*	tres.	tres.	tria.
Voc.	duo.	duae.	duo.	*Voc.*	tres.	tres.	tria.
Abl.	duōbus.	duābus.	duōbus.	*Abl.*	tribus.	tribus.	tribus.

The noun, *Mille* or *Mile*, is declined thus:—

	Nom.	*Gen.*	*Dat.*	*Acc.*	*Voc.*	*Abl.*
Sing.	mille.	———	———	mille.	———	———
Plur.	millia.	millium.	millibus.	millia.	millia.	millibus.

The adjective, *Mille* or *Mile*, is indeclinable.

CHAPTER V.—PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are divided into six classes, Personal, Possessive, Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

The Personal Pronouns are *ego*, I; *tu*, thou; and *sui*, of him(self), her(self), it(self).

	Ego, *I.*	Tu, *thou.*	Sui, *of himself*, &c.
	Sing.	Sing.	Sing.
Nom.	ego, *I.*	tu, *thou.*	———
Gen.	mei, *of me.*	tui, *of thee.*	sui, *of himself*, &c.
Dat.	mihi, *to*, or *for*, *me.*	tibi, *to*, or *for*, *thee.*	sibi, *to*, or *for*, *himself.*
Acc.	me, *me.*	te, *thee.*	se, *himself*, &c.
Voc.	———	tu, *O thou!*	———
Abl.	me, *with*, &c., *me.*	te, *with*, &c., *thee.*	se, *with*, &c.

	PLUR.	PLUR.	PLUR.
Nom.	nos, *we.*	vos, *ye*, or *you.*	———
Gen.	nostrum *or* nostri, *of us.*	vestrum *or* vestri, *of you.*	sui, *of themselves.*
Dat.	nobis, *to*, or *for*, *us.*	vobis, *to*, or *for*, *you.*	sibi, *to*, or *for*, &c.
Acc.	nos, *us.*	vos, *you.*	se, *themselves.*
Voc.	———	vos, *O you!*	———
Abl.	nobis, *with*, &c., *us.*	vobis, *with*, &c., *you.*	se, *with*, &c., *themselves.*

Note 1.—*Mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostri*, and *vestri* are properly the gen. sing. neut. of the Possessive Pronouns, *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, and *vester*. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are contracted from *nostrorum* and *vestrorum*, the gen. plur. neut. of *noster* and *vester*.

Note 2.—*Nostrum* and *vestrum* are used with partitives; *nostri* and *vestri* with other words, as the genitive of the object.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

The Possessive Pronouns are *meus*, my; *tuus*, thy; *suus*, his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own); *noster*, our; *vester*, your; and are declined like *bonus* and *ater*, except that *meus* has *mi* in the vocative singular masculine.

There are also three Gentile Possessive Pronouns, *nostras*, *nostrātis*, belonging to our country; *vestras*, *vestrātis*, belonging to your country; and *cujas*, *cujātis*, belonging to what country? They are declined like *felix*.

Note.—Of these, only *meus*, *noster*, and *nostras* may have a vocative.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

The Demonstrative Pronouns are *hic*, *iste*, *ille*, *is*, *ipse*, and *idem*.

Hic, "this" (beside *me*), "the latter," or "last mentioned" of two objects, is declined thus:—

	SINGULAR.				PLURAL.		
N.	hic.	haec.	hoc, *this.*	*N.*	hi.	hae.	haec, *these*
G.	hujus.	hujus.	hujus.	*G.*	horum.	harum.	horum.
D.	huic.	huic.	huic.	*D.*	his.	his.	his.
A.	hunc.	hanc.	hoc.	*A.*	hos.	has.	haec.
V.	——	——	——	*V.*	——	——	——
A.	hoc.	hac.	hoc.	*A.*	his.	his.	his.

Iste, "that" (beside *you*); also frequently expressing contempt.

	Singular.				Plural.		
N.	iste.	ista.	istud, *that.*	*N.*	isti.	istae.	ista, *those.*
G.	istĭus.	istĭus.	istĭus.	*G.*	istorum.	istarum.	istorum.
D.	isti.	isti.	isti.	*D.*	istis.	istis.	istis.
A.	istum.	istam.	istud.	*A.*	istos.	istas.	ista.
V.	——	——	——	*V.*	——	——	——
A.	isto.	ista.	isto.	*A.*	istis.	istis.	istis.

Ille, "that" (beside *him*, away there), or "the former," or "first mentioned" of two objects, and **ipse**, "self," are declined like *iste*, only that *ipse* has *ipsum* in the nominative and accusative singular neuter.

Hic, *iste*, and *ille* are sometimes called the Demonstratives of the first, second, and third persons respectively.

Is, "that" (already mentioned, or just to be described), "such."

	Singular.				Plural.		
N.	is.	ea.	id, *that.*	*N.*	ii.	eae.	ea, *those.*
G.	ejus.	ejus.	ejus.	*G.*	eorum.	earum.	eorum.
D.	eï.	eï.	eï.	*D.*	iis *or* eïs.	iis *or* eïs.	iis *or* eïs.
A.	eum.	eam.	id.	*A.*	eos.	eas.	ea.
V.	——	——	——	*V.*	——	——	——
A.	eo.	ea.	eo	*A.*	iis *or* eïs.	iis *or* eïs.	iis *or* eïs.

Idem, "same," is a compound of *is*.

	Singular.				Plural.		
N.	idem.	eădem.	idem.	*N.*	iidem.	easdem.	eădem.
G.	ejusdem.	ejusdem.	ejusdem.	*G.*	eorundem.	earundem.	eorundem.
D.	eidem.	eidem.	eidem.	*D.*	iisdem *or* eïsdem, &c.		
A.	eundem.	eandem.	idem.	*A.*	eosdem.	easdem.	eădem.
V.	——	——	——	*V.*	——	——	——
A.	eodem.	eădem.	eodem.	*A.*	iisdem *or* eïsdem, &c.		

RELATIVE PRONOUN.

Qui, *who, which*, or *that*.

	Singular.				Plural.		
N.	qui.	quae.	quod,	*N.*	qui.	quae.	quae.
G.	cujus.	cujus.	cujus.	*G.*	quorum.	quarum.	quorum.
D.	cui.	cui.	cui.	*D.*	quibus *or* queis, &c.		
A.	quem.	quam.	quod.	*A.*	quos.	quas.	quae.
V.	——	——	——	*V.*	——	——	——
A.	quo.	qua.	quo.	*A.*	quibus *or* queis, &c.		

Besides the proper Relative pronoun, *qui*, there are a few relative adjectives answering to other (demonstrative) adjectives.

dem. talis, *of such a kind.*	*rel.* qualis, *as.*
dem. tantus, *so great.*	*rel.* quantus, *as.*
dem. tot, *so many.*	*rel.* quot, *as.*

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

The Interrogative Pronouns are *quis* or *qui*, and *uter*.

Quis, "who?" "which?" (of several), or "what?" and its compounds, have two forms in the nominative singular masculine, and in the nominative and accusative singular neuter; and of these *quis* and *quid* are used as nouns, *qui* and *quod* as adjectives.

	Singular.				Plural.		
N.	quis *or* qui.	quae.	quid *or* quod.	*N.*	qui.	quae.	quae.
G.	cujus.	cujus.	cujus.	*G.*	quorum.	quarum	quorum.
D.	cui.	cui.	cui.	*D.*	quibus.	quibus.	quibus.
A.	quem.	quam.	quid *or* quod.	*A.*	quos.	quas.	quae.
V.	——	——	——	*V.*	——	——	——
A.	quo.	qua.	quo.	*A.*	quibus.	quibus.	quibus.

Quisnam, who? is declined like *quis*, with the affix *nam*. *Uter*, which (of two)? is declined like *ater*, except that it has *ius* in all genders of the gen. sing., and *i* in all genders of the dat. sing.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

The Indefinite Pronouns are:—

aliquis *or* aliqui, aliqua (*or* -quae), aliquid *or* aliquod, *some or other.*
ecquis *or* ecqui, ecqua (*or* -quae), ecquid *or* ecquod, *whether any?*

nequis *or* nequi, nequa (*or* -quae), nequid *or* nequod *lest any.*
nisiquis *or* nisiqui, nisiqua (*or* -quae), nisiquid *or* nisiquod, *if no one.*
numquis *or* numqui, numqua (*or* quae), numquid *or* numquod, *whether any.*
siquis *or* siqui, siqua (*or* -quae), siquid *or* siquod, *if any.*
quispiam, quaepiam, quidpiam *or* quodpiam, *any.*
quisquam, ———, quidquam, *or* quicquam, *any one* (no plural).
quisque, quaeque, quidque *or* quodque, *every.*
quisquis, ———, quidquid *or* quicquid, *whoever* (common only in the nom. sing. masc., and nom. and acc. sing. neut.)
quicunque, quaecunque, quodcunque, *whatever.*
quidam, quaedam, quiddam *or* quoddam, *certain, some.*
quilĭbet, quaelibet, quidlibet *or* quodlibet, *any you please.*
quivis, quaevis, quidvis *or* quodvis, *any you please.*
ullus, ulla, ullum, *any (gen.* ullīus, *dat.* ulli).
unusquīsque, unaquaeque, unumquidque, *or* unumquodque (*gen.* unīuscujusque, *dat.* unicuique, &c.), *every single.*
uterque, utrăque, utrumque (*gen.* utrīusque, &c.), *each (of two).*
utercunque, utracunque, utrumcunque, *whichever (of two).*
uterlĭbet, utralibet, utrumlibet, *whichever you please (of two).*
utervis, utrăvis, utrumvis, *whichever you please (of two).*

Rule.—The compounds of *quis*, when *quis* comes last, have *qua*, rather than *quae*, in the nominative singular feminine, and the nominative and accusative plural neuter.

CHAPTER VI.—VERBS.

Verbs have two Voices or Forms, the *Active* ending in *o*, and the *Passive* in *or*, and three Uses, *Transitive*, *Intransitive*, and *Passive*.

Verbs are divided into six classes, according to their Form and Use:—

1. An Active Verb has the Active Form and the Transitive Use, as *amo*, I love.

2. A Neuter Verb has the Active Form and the Intransitive Use, as *sedeo*, I sit.

3. A Neuter Passive Verb has the Active Form and the Passive Use, as *vapŭlo*, I am beaten.

4. A Passive Verb has the Passive Form and the Passive Use, as *amor*, I am loved.

5. A DEPONENT VERB has the Passive Form and the Transitive or Intransitive Use, as *hortor*, I exhort; *morior*, I die.

6. A SEMI-DEPONENT VERB has a Form partly Active, partly Passive, and generally the Intransitive Use, as *gaudeo*, I rejoice.

There are three kinds of derivative verbs, which are named from their signification:—

1. FREQUENTATIVES, denoting *frequency* of action. They are formed from the supine of the simple verb, by changing *um* into *o*; but *ātum* in the first conjugation is changed into *ĭto*. Thus, fr. *jacio*, throw, *jacto*, toss; fr. *pello*, strike, *pulso*, beat; fr. *habeo*, have, *habĭto*, inhabit; fr. *amplector*, wind around, *amplexor*, love: fr. *dicto*, *dictĭto*; fr. *rogo*, *rogĭto*; fr. *minor*, *minĭtor*.

2. INCEPTIVES, or INCHOATIVES, denoting the *commencement* of an action. They may be formed from the 2nd sing. pres. ind. of the simple verbs by adding *co*; but many are formed from adjectives. Thus, fr. *caleo*, I am hot, *calesco*, I grow hot; fr. *ingemo*, *ingemisco*; fr. *(exardeo)*, *exardesco*; fr. *niger*, *nigresco*; fr. *mitis*, *mitesco*. *Silvesco* is formed from the *noun*, *silva*.

3. DESIDERATIVES, denoting *desire* for an action. Few such verbs exist; and only two, *esurio*, I desire to eat, fr. the supine of *edo*, eat, and *parturio*, fr. supine of *pario*, bring forth, are in common use.

There are four MOODS—Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitive, besides Participles, Gerunds, and Supines.

There are six TENSES—Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect.

There are two NUMBERS—Singular and Plural.

There are three PERSONS—First, Second, and Third.

Verbs are either REGULAR or IRREGULAR, according as their Tenses are formed regularly or irregularly.

As the irregular verb, *sum*, is employed in forming certain parts of the regular verb, its inflexion is given here.

SUM.

Principal Parts.

Pres. Indic.	*Perf. Indic.*	*1st Supine.*	*Pres. Infin.*
sum.	fui.	——	esse, *to be.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1 sum, *I am.*	1 sŭmus, *we are.*
2 ĕs, *thou art.*	2 estis, *ye are.*
3 est, *he is.*	3 sunt, *they are.*

Imperfect Tense.

1 ĕram, *I was.*	1 erāmus, *we were.*
2 ĕrās, *thou wast.*	2 erātis, *ye were.*
3 ĕrat, *he was.*	3 ĕrant, *they were.*

Future Tense.

1 ĕro, *I shall be.*	1 erĭmus, *we shall be.*
2 ĕris, *thou wilt be.*	2 erĭtis, *ye will be.*
3 ĕrit, *he will be.*	3 ĕrunt, *they will be.*

Perfect Tense.

1 fui, *I was* or *have been.*	1 fuĭmus, *we were* or *have been.*
2 fuisti, *thou wast* or *hast been.*	2 fuistis, *ye were* or *have been.*
3 fuit, *he was* or *has been.*	3 fuē-runt, or -re, *they were*, &c.

Pluperfect Tense.

1 fuĕram, *I had been.*	1 fuerāmus, *we had been.*
2 fuĕrās, *thou hadst been.*	2 fuerātis, *ye had been.*
3 fuĕrat, *he had been.*	3 fuĕrant, *they had been.*

Future-Perfect Tense.

1 fuĕro, *I shall have been.*	1 fuerĭmus, *we shall have been.*
2 fuĕris, *thou wilt have been.*	2 fuerĭtis, *ye will have been.*
3 fuĕrit, *he will have been.*	3 fuĕrint, *they will have been.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1 **sim**, *I may be.*	1 **sīmus**, *we may be.*
2 **sīs**, *thou mayest be.*	2 **sītis**, *ye may be.*
3 **sit**, *he may be.*	3 **sint**, *they may be.*

Imperfect Tense.

1 **essem** (**fŏrem**), *I might* or *should be.*	1 **essēmus**, *we might* or *should be.*
2 **essēs** (**fŏrēs**), *thou mightst* or *wouldst be.*	2 **essētis**, *ye might* or *would be.*
3 **esset** (**fŏret**), *he might* or *would be.*	3 **essent** (**fŏrent**), *they might* or *would be.*

Future Tense.

1 **futūrus sim**, *I may be*	1 **futūri simus**, *we may be*
2 **futūrus sis**, *thou mayest be*	2 **futūri sitis**, *ye may be*
3 **futūrus sit**, *he may be*	3 **futūri sint**, *they may be*

about to be.

Perfect Tense.

1 **fuĕrim**, *I may have been.*	1 **fuerīmus**, *we may have been.*
2 **fuĕris**, *thou mayest have been.*	2 **fuerītis**, *ye may have been.*
3 **fuĕrit**, *he may have been.*	3 **fuĕrint**, *they may have been.*

Pluperfect Tense

1 **fuissem**, *I should have been.*	1 **fuissēmus**, *we should have been.*
2 **fuissēs**, *thou wouldst have been.*	2 **fuissētis**, *ye would have been.*
3 **fuisset**, *he would have been.*	3 **fuissent**, *they would have been.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1 ———	1 ———
2 **ĕs**, *be thou*, or **esto**, *thou shalt be.*	2 **este**, *be ye*, or **estōte**, *ye shall be.*
3 **esto**, *let him be* or *he shall be.*	3 **sunto**, *let them be* or *they shall be.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and *Imperfect.*	*Perfect* and *Pluperfect.*
esse, *to be.*	fuisse, *to have been.*
Future.	*Future-Perfect.*
fŏre, or, futūr-us, -a, -um esse, *to be about to be.*	futūr-us, -a, -um fuisse *to have been about to be.*

PARTICIPLE.

Future, futūr-us, -a, -um, *about to be.*

REGULAR VERBS.

REGULAR VERBS OF THE ACTIVE FORM.

Regular Verbs of the Active Form are of four CONJUGATIONS.

The First *has* ā long *before* re *of the Infinitive.*
The Second ,, ē long ,, ,, ,,
The Third ,, ĕ short ,, ,, ,,
The Fourth ,, ī long ,, ,, ,,

They have four PRINCIPAL PARTS, from which the other parts are formed:—

The Present Indicative, *ending in* o.
The Perfect Indicative, ,, i.
The First Supine, ,, um.
The Present Infinitive, ,, re.

When these parts are given, the verb is said to be *conjugated.*

(For list of Regular Verbs of 1st, 2nd, 3rd, and 4th conjugations, see App. B., 1, 2, 3, 4.)

ACTIVE TENSES IN THE

PRINCIPAL

	Pres. Ind.	*Perf. Ind.*	1*st Sup.*	*Pres. Inf.*
I.	**āmo.**	**amāvi.**	**amātum.**	**amāre,** *to love.*
II.	**monĕo.**	**monŭi.**	**monĭtum.**	**monēre,** *to warn.*

INDICATIVE

Present.	I love, or, am loving.	**am-o.**
Imperfect.	I loved, or, was loving.	**am-ābam.**
Future.	I shall love.	**am-ābo.**
Perfect.	I loved, or, have loved.	**amāv-i.**
Pluperfect.	I had loved.	**amav-ĕram.**
Future-Perfect.	I shall have loved.	**amav-ĕro.**

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present.	I may love.*	**am-em.**
Imperfect.	I might, or, should love.	**am-ārem.**
Future.	I may be about to love.	**amāt-ūrus sim.**
Perfect.	I may have loved.	**amāv-ĕrim.**
Pluperfect.	I should have loved.	**amāv-issem.**

IMPERATIVE

Present.	Love thou.	**amā.**

INFINITIVE

Pres. and *Impf.*	to love.	**am-āre.**
Future.	to be about to love.	**amāt-ūrus esse.**
Perf. and *Plup.*	to have loved.	**amāv-isse.**
Future-Perfect.	to have been about to love.	**amāt-ūrus fuisse.**

PARTI-

Pres. and *Impf.*	loving.	**am-ans.**
Future.	about to love.	**amāt-urus.**

GER-

Nominative.	(the necessity of) loving.	**am-andum.**

SUP-

First.	to love.	**amāt-um.**
Second.	to love, or, to be loved.	**amāt-u.**

* All the tenses of the Subjunctive, both in the Active and
sponding tenses of the Indicative.

FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

PARTS.

	Pres. Ind.	*Perf. Ind.*	*1st Sup.*	*Pres. Inf.*
III.	scrĭbo.	scripsi.	scriptum.	scribĕrĕ, *to write.*
IV.	audĭo.	audīvi.	audītum.	audīre, *to hear.*

MOOD.

mon-ĕo, *warn.*	scrib-o, *write.*	audi-o, *hear.*
mon-ēbam.	scrib-ēbam.	audi-ēbam.
mon-ēbo.	scrib-am.	audi-am.
monŭ-i.	scrips-i.	audīv-i.
monu-ĕram.	scrips-ĕram.	audīv-ĕram.
monu-ĕro.	scrips-ĕro.	audīv-ĕro.

MOOD.

mon-ĕam.	scrib-am.	audi-am.
mon-ĕrem.	scrib-ĕrem.	aud-īrem.
monīt-ūrus sim.	script-ūrus sim.	audīt-ūrus sim.
monu-ĕrim.	scrips-ĕrim.	audīv-ĕrim.
monu-issem.	scrips-issem.	audīv-issem.

MOOD.

monĕ.	scribĕ.	audī.

MOOD.

mon-ēre.	scrib-ĕre.	aud-īre.
monīt-ūrus esse.	script-ūrus esse.	audīt-ūrus esse.
monu-isse.	scrips-isse.	audīv-isse.
monīt-ūrus fuisse.	script-ūrus fuisse.	audīt-ūrus fuisse.

CIPLES.

mon-ens.	scrib-ens.	audi-ens.
monīt-ūrus.	script-ūrus.	audīt-urus.

UND.

mon-endum.	scrib-endum.	audi-endum.

INES.

monīt-um.	script-um.	audīt-um.
monīt-u.	script-u.	audīt-u

Passive Voices, have very often the same English as the corre-

REGULAR VERBS OF

Regular Verbs of the Passive form are of four Conjugations.

The First *has* ā long *before* rī *of the Infinitive.*
The Second ,, ē long ,, ,, ,,
The Third ,, ĭ *added to the stem of the verb.*
The Fourth ,, ī long *before* rī *of the Infinitive.*

PASSIVE TENSES IN THE

PRINCIPAL

	Pres. Ind.	*Pref. Part.*	*Pres. Inf.*
I.	ămor.	amātus.	amārī, *to be loved.*
II.	monĕor.	monĭtus.	monērī, *to be warned.*

INDICATIVE

Present.	I am (being) loved.	am-or.
Imperfect.	I was (being) loved.	am-ābar.
Future.	I shall be loved.	am-ābor.
Perfect.	I was, or, have been loved.	amāt-us sum.
Pluperfect.	I had been loved.	amāt-us eram.
Future-Perfect.	I shall have been loved.	amāt-us ero.

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present.	I may be loved.	am-er.
Imperfect.	I might, or, should be loved.	am-ārer.
Perfect.	I may have been loved.	amāt-us sim.
Pluperfect.	I should have been loved.	amāt-us essem.

IMPERATIVE

Present.	Be thou loved.	amāre.

INFINITIVE

Pres. and *Impf.*	to be loved.	am-āri.
Future.	to be about to be loved.	amāt-um īri.
Perf. and *Plup.*	to have been loved.	amāt-us esse.

PARTI-

Perfect.	loved, or, having been loved.	amāt-us.
Future.	(requiring) to be loved.	am-andus.

THE PASSIVE FORM.

They have three Principal Parts.

The Present Indicative *ending in* or.
The Perfect Participle ,, us.
The Present Infinitive ,, ri (except in 3d conj.)

FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

PARTS.

	Pres. Ind.	*Perf. Part.*	*Pres. Inf.*
III.	scrībor.	scriptus.	scrībi, *to be written.*
IV.	audĭor.	auditus.	audīri, *to be heard.*

MOOD.

mon-ĕor, *warned.*	scrīb-or, *written.*	audī-or, *heard.*
mon-ēbar.	scrīb-ēbar.	audi-ēbar.
mon-ēbor.	scrīb-ar.	audī-ar.
monĭt-us sum.	script-us sum.	audĭt-us sum.
monĭt-us eram.	script-us eram.	audĭt-us eram.
monĭt-us ero.	script-us ero.	audĭt-us ero.

MOOD.

mon-ĕar.	scrīb-ar.	aud-īar.
mon-ērer.	scrīb-ērer.	aud-īrer.
monĭt-us sim.	script-us sim.	audĭt-us sim.
monĭt-us essem.	script-us essem.	audĭt-us essem.

MOOD.

monēre.	scribĕre.	audīre.

MOOD.

mon-ēri.	scrīb-i.	aud-īri.
monĭt-um īri.	script-um īri.	audĭt-um īri.
monĭt-us esse.	script-us esse.	audĭt-us esse.

CIPLES.

monĭt-us.	script-us.	audĭt-us.
mon-endus.	scrīb-endus.	audi-endus.

Formation of Active Tenses.

1. From the PRESENT INDICATIVE are formed the *Imperfect* and *Future Indicative;* the *Present Subjunctive;* the *Present Participle;* and the *Gerund;* by changing in the

			IND.		SUB.	PART.	GERUND.
			Impf.	*Fut.*	*Pres.*	*Pres.*	*Nom.*
1st	*conj.*	o *into*	ăbam.	ăbo.	em.	ans.	andum.
2nd	,,	eo ,,	ēbam.	ēbo.	eam.	ens.	endum.
3rd & 4th	,,	o ,,	ēbam.	am.	am.	ens.	endum.

2. From the PERFECT INDICATIVE are formed the *Pluperfect* and *Future-Perfect Indicative;* the *Perfect* and *Pluperfect Subjunctive;* and the *Perfect Infinitive;* by changing, in all the conjugations,—

	IND.		SUB.		INF.
	Plup.	*Fut. P.*	*Perf.*	*Plup.*	*Perf.*
1 *into*	ĕram	ĕro	ĕrim	issem	isse.

INFLEXION OF THE TENSES IN

ACTIVE VOICE. I.

INDICATIVE.

	S.	I love, or, am loving.	am-o
		Thou lovest, or, art loving.	am-ās.
		He loves, or, is loving.	am-at.
Pres.	*P.*	We love, or, are loving.	am-āmus.
		Ye love, or, are loving.	am-ātis.
		They love, or, are loving.	am-ant.
	S.	I loved, or, was loving.	am-ābam.
		Thou lovedst, or, wast loving.	am-ābās.
		He loved, or, was loving.	am-ābat.
Impf.	*P.*	We loved, or, were loving.	am-ābāmus.
		Ye loved, or, were loving.	am-ābātis.
		They loved, or, were loving.	am-ābant.

3. From the FIRST SUPINE are formed the *Future Participle* and the *Second Supine*, by changing **um** into **urus** and **u**.

4. From the PRESENT INFINITIVE are formed the *Imperfect Subjunctive*, by adding **m**; and the *Present Imperative*, by striking off **re**.

Formation of Passive Tenses.

1. **o** of the Active becomes **or** in the Passive, and **m** is changed into **r**.

2. The Perfect Participle is formed by changing **um** of the First Supine into **us**.

3. The Present Infinitive is formed by changing **re** of the Present Infinitive Active into **ri**, except in verbs of the Third Conjugation, which change **ĕre** into **i**.

4. The Present Imperative is the same as the Present Infinitive Active.

5. The Future Infinitive is compounded of the First Supine and **iri** (Pres. Inf. Pass. of *eo*, go.)

6. The Future Participle, or Gerundive, is formed by changing **dum** of the Gerund into **dus**.

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

II.	III.	IV.
	INDICATIVE.	
mon-ĕo.	scrib-o.	aud-io.
mon-ēs.	scrib-is.	aud-is.
mon-et.	scrib-it.	aud-it,
mon-ēmus.	scrib-imus.	aud-imus.
mon-ētis.	scrib-itis.	aud-itis.
mon-ent.	scrib-unt.	aud-iunt.
mon-ēbam.	scrib-ēbam.	aud-iēbam.
mon-ēbās.	scrib-ēbās.	aud-iēbās.
mon-ēbat.	scrib-ēbat	aud-iēbat.
mon-ēbāmus.	scrib-ēbāmus.	aud-iēbāmus.
mon-ēbātis.	scrib-ēbātis.	aud-iēbātis.
mon-ēbant.	scrib-ēbant.	aud-iēbant.

		Active Voice.	I.
	S.	I shall love.	am-ābo.
		Thou wilt love.	am-ābis.
		He will love.	am-ābit.
Fut.	*P.*	We shall love.	am-ābimus.
		Ye will love.	am-abītis.
		They will love.	am-ābunt.
	S.	I loved, or, have loved.	amāv-ī.
		Thou lovedst, or, hast loved.	amāv-isti.
		He loved, or, has loved.	amāv-it.
Perf.	*P.*	We loved, or, have loved.	amāv-imus.
		Ye loved, or, have loved.	amāv-istis.
		They loved, or, have loved.	amāv-ērunt, or, -ēre.
	S.	I had loved.	amāv-eram.
		Thou hadst loved.	amāv-erās.
		He had loved.	amāv-erat.
Plup.	*P.*	We had loved.	amāv-erāmus.
		Ye had loved.	amāv-erātis.
		They had loved.	amāv-erant.
	S.	I shall have loved.	amāv-ēro.
		Thou wilt have loved.	amāv-eris.
		He will have loved.	amāv-erit.
Fut.-Perf.	*P.*	We shall have loved.	amāv-erimus.
		Ye will have loved.	amāv-eritis.
		They will have loved.	amāv-erint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

	S.	I may love.	am-em.
		Thou mayest love.	am-ēs.
		He may love.	am-et.
Pres.	*P.*	We may love.	am-ēmus.
		Ye may love.	am-ētis.
		They may love.	am-ent.
	S.	I might, or, should love.	am-ārem.
		Thou mightst, or, wouldst love.	am-ārēs.
		He might, or, would love.	am-āret.
Impf.	*P.*	We might, or, should love.	am-ārēmus.
		Ye might, or, would love.	am-ārētis.
		They might, or, would love.	am-ārent.

II.	III.	IV.
mon-ēbo.	scrīb-am.	aud-iam.
mon-ēbis.	scrīb-ēs.	aud-ies.
mon-ēbit.	scrīb-et.	aud-iet.
mon-ēbimus.	scrīb-ēmus.	aud-iēmus.
mon-ēbitis.	scrīb-ētis.	aud-iētis.
mon-ēbunt.	scrīb-ent.	aud-ient.
monŭ-i.	scripsi.	audīv-i.
monŭ-isti.	scripsi-isti.	audīv-isti.
monŭ-it.	scripsi-it.	audīv-it.
monŭ-imus.	scripsi-imus.	audīv-imus.
monŭ-istis.	scripsi-istis.	audīv-istis.
monŭ-ērunt, or, -ēre.	scripsi-ērunt, or, -ēre.	audīv-ērunt, or, -ēre.
monu-ēram.	scripsi-ēram.	audīv-ēram.
monu-ērās.	scripsi-ērās.	audīv-ērās.
monu-ērat.	scripsi-ērat.	audīv-ērat.
monu-erāmus.	scripsi-erāmus.	audīv-erāmus.
monu-erātis.	scripsi-erātis.	audīv-erātis.
monu-ērant.	scripsi-ērant.	audīv-ērant.
monu-ēro.	scripsi-ēro.	audīv-ēro.
monu-ēris.	scripsi-ēris.	audīv-ēris.
monu-ērit.	scripsi-ērit.	audīv-ērit.
monu-erīmus.	scripsi-erīmus.	audīv-erīmus.
monu-erītis.	scripsi-erītis.	audīv-erītis.
monu-ērint.	scripsi-ērint.	audīv-ērint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

mon-ēam.	scrīb-am.	aud-iam.
mon-ēās.	scrīb-ās.	aud-iās.
mon-eāt.	scrīb-at.	aud-iat.
mon-eāmus.	scrīb-āmus.	aud-iāmus.
mon-eātis.	scrīb-ātis.	aud-iātis.
mon-eant.	scrīb-ant.	aud-iant.
mon-ērem	scrīb-erem.	aud-irem.
mon-ērēs.	scrīb-erēs.	aud-irēs.
mon-ēret.	scrīb-eret.	aud-iret.
mon-ērēmus.	scrīb-erēmus.	aud-irēmus.
mon-ērētis.	scrīb-erētis.	aud-irētis.
mon-ērent.	scrīb-erent.	aud-irent.

		Active Voice.	I.
Fut.	*S.*	I may be about to love.	amāt- sim.
		Thou mayest be about to love.	ūrus, sis.
		He may be about to love.	a, um sit.
	P.	We may be about to love.	amāt- sīmus.
		Ye may be about to love.	ūri, sītis.
		They may be about to love.	ae, a sint.
Perf.	*S.*	I may have loved.	amāv-ĕrim.
		Thou mayest have loved.	amāv-ĕris.
		He may have loved.	amāv-ĕrit.
	P.	We may have loved.	amāv-erīmus.
		Ye may have loved.	amāv-erītis.
		They may have loved.	amāv-ĕrint.
Plup.	*S.*	I should have loved.	amāv-issem.
		Thou wouldst have loved.	amāv-issēs.
		He would have loved.	amāv-isset.
	P.	We should have loved.	amāv-issēmus.
		Ye would have loved.	amāv-issētis.
		They would have loved.	amāv-issent.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	*S.*	Love thou, or, thou *shalt* love.	am-ā, *or*, -āto.
		Let him love, or, he *shall* love.	am-āto.
	P.	Love ye, or, ye *shall* love.	am-āte, *or*,-ātōte.
		Let them love, or, they *shall* love.	am-anto.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. and *Impf.*	to love.	am-āre.
Future.	to be about to love.	amāt-urus, a, um esse.
Perf. and *Plup.*	to have loved.	amāv-isse.
Fut.-Perf.	to have been about to love.	amāt-ūrus, a, um fuisse.

PARTICIPLES

Pres. and *Impf.*	loving.	am-ans, -antis.
Future.	about to love.	amāt-ūrus, a, um.

II.	III.	IV.
monit- fūrus, a, um sim, sis, sit.	script- fūrus, a, um sim, sis, sit.	audīt- fūrus, a, um sim. sis. sit.
monit- fūri, ae, a sīmus. sītis. sint.	script- fūri, ae, a sīmus. sītis. sint.	audīt- fūri, ae, a sīmus. sītis. sint.
monu-ĕrim.	scrips-ĕrim.	audīv-ĕrim.
monu-ĕris.	scrips-ĕris.	audīv-ĕris.
monu-ĕrit.	scrips-ĕrit.	audīv-ĕrit.
monu-erimus.	scrips-erimus.	audīv-erimus.
monu-ĕritis.	scrips-erītis.	audīv-erītis.
monu-erint.	scrips-ĕrint.	audīv-ĕrint.
monu-issem.	scrips-issem.	audīv-issem.
monu-issēs.	scrips-issēs.	audīv-issēs.
monu-isset.	scrips-isset.	audīv-isset.
monu-issēmus.	scrips-issēmus.	audīv-issēmus.
monu-issētis.	scrips-issētis.	audīv-issētis.
monu-issent.	scrips-issent.	audīv-issent.

IMPERATIVE.

mon-ē, *or*, -ēto.	scrib-ĕ, *or*, -īto.	aud-ī, *or*, -īto.
mon-ēto.	scrib-īto.	aud-īto.
mon-ēte, *or*, -ētōte.	scrib-īte, *or*, -ītōte.	aud-īte, *or*, -ītōte.
mon-ento.	scrib-unto.	aud-iunto.

INFINITIVE.

mon-ēre.	scrib-ĕre.	aud-īre.
monīt-ūrus, a, um esse.	script-ūrus, a, um esse.	audīt-ūrus, a, um esse.
monu-isse.	scrips-isse.	audīv-isse.
monīt-ūrus, a, um fuisse.	script-ūrus, a, um fuisse.	audīt-ūrus, a, um fuisse.

PARTICIPLES.

mon-ens, -entis.	scrib-ens, -entis.	audi-ens, -entis.
monīt-ūrus, a, um.	script-ūrus, a, um.	audīt-ūrus, a, um

Active Voice. I.

GERUNDS.

Nom.	the necessity of loving.	am-andum.
Gen.	of loving.	am-andi.
Dat.	to, or, for loving.	am-ando.
Acc.	(the necessity of) loving.	am-andum.
Abl.	with, or, by loving.	am-ando.

SUPINES.

First.	to love.	amāt-um.
Second.	to love, or, to be loved.	amāt-u.

PASSIVE VOICE. I.

INDICATIVE.

Pres.	*S.* I am (being) loved.	am-or.
	Thou art (being) loved.	am-āris, *or*, -āre.
	He is (being) loved.	am-ātur.
	P. We are (being) loved.	am-āmur.
	Ye are (being) loved.	am-amĭni.
	They are (being) loved.	am-antur.
Impf.	*S.* I was (being) loved.	am-ābar.
	Thou wast (being) loved.	am-ābāris, *or*, -ābāre.
	He was (being) loved.	am-ābātur.
	P. We were (being) loved.	am-ābāmur.
	Ye were (being) loved.	am-ābamĭni.
	They were (being) loved.	am-ābantur.
Fut.	*S.* I shall be loved.	am-ābor.
	Thou wilt be loved.	am-ābĕris, *or*, -ābĕre.
	He will be loved.	am-ābĭtur.
	P. We shall be loved.	am-ābĭmur.
	Ye will be loved.	am-ābĭmĭni.
	They will be loved.	am-ābuntur.
Perf.	*S.* I was, or, have been loved.	amāt-us, a, um { sum.
	Thou wast, or, hast been loved.	{ ĕs.
	He was, or, has been loved.	{ est.
	P. We were, or, have been loved.	amāt-i, ae, a { sūmus.
	Ye were, or, have been loved.	{ estis.
	They were, or, have been loved.	{ sunt.

II.	III.	IV.
	GERUNDS.	
mon-endum.	scrib-endum.	aud-iendum.
mon-endi.	scrib-endi.	aud-iendi.
mon-endo.	scrib-endo.	aud-iendo.
mon-endum.	scrib-endum.	aud-iendum.
mon-endo.	scrib-endo.	aud-iendo.
	SUPINES.	
monĭt-um.	script-um.	audĭt-um.
monĭt-u.	script-u.	audĭt-u.

II.	III.	IV.
	INDICATIVE.	
mon-ĕor.	scrib-or.	aud-ĭor.
mon-ēris, *or*, -ēre.	scrib-ĕris, *or*, -ĕre.	aud-īris, *or*, -īre.
mon-ētur.	scrib-ĭtur.	aud-ītur.
mon-ēmur.	scrib-imur.	aud-īmur.
mon-emĭni.	scrib-imĭni.	aud-imĭni.
mon-entur.	scrib-untur.	aud-iuntur.
mon-ēbar.	scrib-ēbar.	aud-iēbar.
mon-ēbāris, *or*, -ēbāre.	scrib-ēbāris, *or*, -ēbāre.	aud-iēbāris, *or*, -iēbāre.
mon-ēbātur.	scrib-ēbātur.	aud-iēbātur.
mon-ēbāmur.	scrib-ēbāmur.	aud-iēbāmur.
mon-ēbamĭni.	scrib-ēbamĭni.	aud-iēbamĭni.
mon-ēbantur.	scrib-ēbantur.	aud-iēbantur.
mon-ēbor.	scrib-ar.	aud-iar.
mon-ēbĕris, *or*, -ēbĕre.	scrib-ĕris, *or*, -ĕre.	aud-iēris, *or*, -iēre.
mon-ēbĭtur.	scrib-ētur.	aud-iētur.
mon-ebimur.	scrib-ēmur.	aud-iēmur.
mon-ebimĭni.	scrib-emĭni.	aud-iemĭni.
mon-ēbuntur.	scrib-entur.	aud-ientur.
monĭt-us, a, um { sum. ĕs. est.	script-us, a, um { sum. ĕs. est.	audĭt-us, a, um { sum. ĕs. est.
monĭt-i, ae, a { sumus. estis. sunt.	script-i, ae, a { sumus. estis. sunt.	audĭt-i, ae, a { sumus. estis. sunt.

Passive Voice. I.

	S. I had been loved.	amāt-us, a, um	eram.
	Thou hadst been loved.		erās.
	He had been loved.		erat.
Plup.	*P.* We had been loved.	amāt-i, ae, a	erāmus.
	Ye had been loved.		erātis.
	They had been loved.		erant.
	S. I shall have been loved.	amāt-us, a, um	ero.
	Thou wilt have been loved.		eris.
	He will have been loved.		erit.
Fut.-Perf.	*P.* We shall have been loved.	amāt-i, ae, a	erimus.
	Ye will have been loved.		eritis.
	They will have been loved.		erunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

	S. I may be loved.	am-er.
	Thou mayest be loved.	am-ēris, *or*, -ēre.
	He may be loved.	am-ētur.
Pres.	*P.* We may be loved.	am-ēmur.
	Ye may be loved.	am-emĭni.
	They may be loved.	am-entur.
	S. I might, or, should be loved.	am-ārer.
	Thou mightst, or, wouldst be loved.	am-ārēris, *or*, -ārēre.
	He might, or, would be loved.	am-ārētur.
Impf.	*P.* We might, or, should be loved.	am-ārēmur.
	Ye might, or, would be loved.	am-ārēmĭni.
	They might, or, would be loved.	am-ārentur.
	S. I may have been loved.	amāt-us, a, um	sim.
	Thou mayest have been loved.		sis.
	He may have been loved.		sit.
Perf.	*P.* We may have been loved.	amāt-i, ae, a	sīmus.
	Ye may have been loved.		sītis.
	They may have been loved.		sint.
	S. I should have been loved.	amāt-us, a, um	essem.
	Thou wouldst have been loved.		essēs.
	He would have been loved.		esset.
Plup.	*P.* We should have been loved.	amāt-i, ae, a	essēmus.
	Ye would have been loved.		essētis.
	They would have been loved.		essent.

II.	III.	IV.
monĭt-us, a, um { eram. erās. erat.	script-us, a, um { eram. erās. erat.	audīt-us, a, um { eram. erās. erat.
monĭt-i, ae, a { erāmus. erātis. erant.	script-i, ae, a { erāmus. erātis. erant.	audīt-i, ae, a { erāmus. erātis. erant.
monĭt-us, a, um. { ero. eris. erit.	script-us, a, um { ero. eris. erit.	audīt-us, a, um { ero. eris. erit.
monĭt-i, ae, a { erimus. eritis. erunt.	script-i, ae, a { erimus. eritis. erunt.	audīt-i, ae, a { erimus. eritis. erunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

mon-ēar.	scrib-ar.	aud-īar.
mon-ērīs, *or*, -ēre.	scrib-ārīs, *or*, -āre.	aud-īrīs, *or*, -īre.
mon-ētur.	scrib-ātur.	aud-ītur.
mon-ēmur.	scrib-āmur.	aud-īmur.
mon-eāmini.	scrib-amini.	aud-iamini.
mon-eantur.	scrib-antur.	aud-iantur.
mon-ērer.	scrib-ārer.	aud-īrer.
mon-ērēris, *or*, -ērēre.	scrib-ārēris, *or*, -ārēre.	aud-īrēris, *or*, -īrēre.
mon-ērētur.	scrib-ārētur.	aud-īrētur.
mon-ērēmur.	scrib-ārēmur.	aud-īrēmur.
mon-ērēmini.	scrib-ārēmini.	aud-īrēmini.
mon-ērentur.	scrib-ārentur.	aud-īrentur.
monĭt-us, a, um { sim. sīs. sit.	script-us, a, um { sim. sīs. sit.	audīt-us, a, um { sim. sīs. sit.
monĭt-i, ae, a { sīmus. sītis. sint.	script-i, ae, a { sīmus. sītis. sint.	audīt-i, ae, a { sīmus. sītis. sint.
monĭt-us, a, um { essem. essēs. esset.	script-us. a, um { essem. essēs. esset.	audīt-us, a, um { essem. essēs. esset.
monĭt-i, ae, a { essēmus. essētis. essent.	script-i, ae, a { essēmus. essētis. essent.	audīt-i, ae, a { essēmus. essētis. essent.

Passive Voice. I.

IMPERATIVE.

S.	Be thou loved, ŏr, thou *shalt* be loved.	am-āre, *or*, -ātor.
	Let him be loved, or, he *shall* be loved.	am-ātor.
Pres. *P.*	Be ye loved, or, ye *shall* be loved.	am-amĭni.
	Let them be loved, or, they *shall* be loved.	am-antor.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. and *Impf.*	to be loved.	am-āri.
Future.	to be about to be loved.	amāt-um īri.
Perf. and *Plup.*	to have been loved.	amāt-us esse.

PARTICIPLES.

Perf.	loved, being loved, or, having been loved.	amāt-us, a, um.
Fut.	(requiring) to be loved.	am-andus, a, um.

VERBS IN *IO* OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Verbs in *io* of the Third Conjugation form their Tenses regularly, but have the inflexion of the Present Indicative and Present Imperative peculiar. (For list of verbs in *io*, see App. B. 3.)

RAPIO.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
rapio, rapui,	rapior, raptus,
raptum, rapĕre, *to seize.*	rapi, *to be seized.*

INDICATIVE.

	I seize or *am seizing.*	*I am (being) seized.*
	rap-io.	rap-ior.
	rap-is.	rap-ĕris, *or*, -ĕre.
Pres.	rap-it.	rap-itur.
	rap-imus.	rap-imur.
	rap-ĭtis.	rap-imĭni.
	rap-iunt.	rap-iuntur.

II.	III.	IV.
	IMPERATIVE.	
mon-ēre, *or*, -ētor.	scrib-ĕre, *or*, -ītor.	aud-īre, *or*, -ītor.
mon-ētor.	scrib-ītor.	aud-ītor.
mon-emĭni.	scrib-imĭni.	aud-imĭni.
mon-entor.	scrib-untor.	aud-iuntor.
	INFINITIVE.	
mon-ēri.	scrib-i.	aud-īri.
monĭt-um iri.	script-um iri.	audīt-um iri.
monĭt-us esse.	script-us esse.	audīt-us esse.
	PARTICIPLES.	
monĭt-us, a, um.	script-us, a, um,	audīt-us, a, um.
mon-endus, a, um.	scrib-endus, a, um.	aud-iendus, a, um.

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
	I seized or *was seizing.*	*I was (being) seized.*
Impf.	rap-iēbam.	rap-iēbar.
	&c.	&c.
	I shall seize.	*I shall be seized.*
Fut.	rap-iam.	rap-iar.
	rap-iēs.	rap-iēris, or, -iēre.
	&c.	&c.
	I seized or *have seized.*	*I was* or *have been seized.*
Perf.	rapŭ-i.	rapt-us sum.
	rapŭ-isti.	&c.
	&c.	
	I had seized.	*I had been seized.*
Plup.	rapu-ĕram.	rapt-us eram.
	&c.	&c.
	I shall have seized.	*I shall have been seized.*
Fut.-P.	rapu-ĕro.	rapt-us ero.
	&c.	&c.

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
	SUBJUNCTIVE.	
	I may seize.	*I may be seized.*
Pres.	rap-iam.	rap-iar.
	rap-iās.	rap-iāris, *or*, -iāre.
	&c.	&c.
	I might or *should seize.*	*I might* or *should be seized.*
Impf.	rap-ĕrem.	rap-ĕrer.
	&c.	&c.
	I may be about to seize.	
Fut.	rapt-ūrus sim.	———
	&c.	
	I may have seized.	*I may have been seized.*
Perf.	rapu-ĕrim.	rapt-us sim.
	&c.	&c.
	I should have seized.	*I should have been seized.*
Plup.	rapu-issem.	rapt-us essem.
	&c.	&c.
	IMPERATIVE.	
	seize thou.	*be thou seized.*
	rap-e, *or*, -ito.	rap-ĕre, *or*, -itor.
Pres.	rap-ite.	rap-itor.
	rap-ite, *or*, -itōte.	rap-imini.
	rap-iunto.	rap-iuntor.
	INFINITIVE.	
	to seize.	*to be seized.*
Pres. & Impf.	rap-ĕre.	rap-i.
	to be about to seize.	*to be about to be seized.*
Fut.	rapt-ūrus esse.	rapt-um īri.
	to have seized.	*to have been seized.*
Perf. & Plup.	rapu-isse.	rapt-us esse.
	to have been about to seize.	
Fut. Perf.	rapt-ūrus fuisse.	———
	PARTICIPLES.	
	seizing.	*being seized.*
Pres. & Impf.	rap-iens.	*Perf.* rapt-us.
	about to seize.	(*requiring*) *to be seized.*
Fut.	rapt-ūrus.	rap-iendus.

GERUNDS. rap-iendum, &c., *the necessity of seizing*, &c.

SUP. 1st. rapt-um, *to seize.*
2nd rapt-u, *to seize* or *to be seized.*

TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

The Infinitive in Latin has its subject in the accusative, and its clause is generally introduced in English by the particle 'that.'

INFINITIVE—ACTIVE.

Amare, *to love.*

	me amāre, *that I love* or *am loving.*
	te amāre, *that thou lovest* or *art loving.*
	illum amare, *that he loves* or *is loving.*
Present.	**nos amāre**, *that we love* or *are loving.*
	vos amāre, *that ye love* or *are loving.*
	illos amāre, *that they love* or *are loving.*
Imperfect.	**me amāre**, *that I loved* or *was loving.*
	&c. &c.
	me amatūrum esse, *that I shall* or *should love.*
	te amatūrum esse, *that thou wilt* or *wouldst love.*
	illum amatūrum esse, *that he will* or *would love.*
Future.	**nos amatūros esse**, *that we shall* or *should love.*
	vos amatūros esse, *that ye will* or *would love.*
	illos amatūros esse, *that they will* or *would love.*
Perfect.	**me amavisse**, *that I loved* or *have loved.*
Pluperfect.	**me amavisse**, *that I loved* or *had loved.*
Fut. Perf.	**me amatūrum fuisse**, *that I shall* or *should have loved.*
	nos amatūros fuisse, *that we shall* or *should have loved.*

INFINITIVE—PASSIVE.

Amari, *to be loved.*

Present.	**me amāri**, *that I am (being) loved.*
Imperfect.	**me amāri**, *that I was (being) loved.*
Future.	**me amātum iri**, *that I shall* or *should be loved.*
	nos amātum iri, *that we shall* or *should be loved.*
Perfect.	**me amātum esse**, *that I was* or *have been loved.*
	nos amātos esse, *that we were* or *have been loved.*
Pluperfect.	**me amātum esse**, *that I was* or *had been loved.*
	nos amātos esse, *that we were* or *had been loved.*

TENSES OF NECESSITY.

The Active Tenses of Necessity are expressed by the nominative or accusative Gerund, and the verb *esse;* and the subject is put in the dative. The Passive Tenses are expressed by the Gerundive (or Participle in *dus*) agreeing with the subject, and the verb *esse.*

ACTIVE TENSES OF NECESSITY.

Amandum, *the necessity of loving.*

INDICATIVE.

	amandum est mihi, *I must, have to,* or *require to, love.*
	amandum est tibi, *thou must,* or *hast to, love.*
	amandum est illi, *he must,* or *has to, love.*
Present.	**amandum est nobis,** *we must,* or *have to, love.*
	amandum est vobis, *ye must,* or *have to, love.*
	amandum est illis, *they must,* or *have to, love.*
Imperfect.	**amandum erat mihi,** *I had,* or *required to, love.*
Future.	**amandum erit mihi.** *I shall have to love.*
Perfect.	**amandum fuit mihi,** *I had,* or *have had, to love,* or *I must have loved.*
Pluperfect.	**amandum fuerat mihi,** *I had had to love.*
Fut. Perf.	**amandum fuerit mihi,** *I shall have had to love.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.	**amandum sit mihi,** *I may have to love.*
	&c.

INFINITIVE.

Present.	**amandum esse mihi,** *that I must,* or *have to, love.*
	&c.

PASSIVE TENSES OF NECESSITY.

Amandus, *requiring to be loved.*

INDICATIVE.

	amandus sum, *I must,* or *have to, be loved.*
	amandus es, *thou must,* or *hast to, be loved.*
Present.	**amandus est,** *he must,* or *has to, be loved.*
	amandi sumus *we must,* or *have to, be loved.*
	&c.

DEPONENT VERBS.

Deponent Verbs are so called because they lay aside *(depono)* the Active Form.

The Future Subjunctive, the Future Infinitive, and two of the Participles, have the Active Form.

The Participle in *dus* and the Second Supine have the Passive Use.

Transitive Deponents have four participles.

(For list of Deponents, see App. B. 5.)

MIROR.

mīror, mirātus, mirāri, *to admire.* (*1st conj.*).

INDICATIVE.

	I admire or *am admiring.*		*I shall admire.*
	mir-or.	*Fut.*	**mir-ābor.**
	mir-āris, *or,* **-āre.**		**mir-ābĕris,***or,***-ābĕre.**
Pres.	**mir-ātur.**		&c.
	mir-āmur.		
	mir-amini.		*I admired* or *have admired.*
	mir-antur.	*Perf.*	**mirātus sum.**
	I admired or *was admiring.*		*I had admired.*
Impf.	**mir-ābar.**	*Plup.*	**mirātus eram.**
	mir-ābāris,*or,***-ābāre.**		*I shall have admired.*
	&c.	*Fut.-Perf.*	**mirātus ero.**

SUBJUNCTIVE.

	I may admire.		*I may be about to admire.*
Pres.	**mir-er.**	*Fut.*	**miraturus sim.**
	mir-āris, *or,* **-āre.**		
	&c.		*I may have admired.*
	I might or *should admire.*	*Perf.*	**mirātus sim.**
Impf.	**mir-ārer.**		
	mir-ārēris, *or,* **-ārēre.**		*I should have admired*
	&c.	*Plup.*	**mirātus essem.**

IMPERATIVE.

	admire thou.	*admire ye.*
Pres.	*S.* **mir-āre,** *or,* **-ātor.**	*P.* **mir-amini.**
	mir-ātor.	**mir-antor.**

INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLES.	
	to admire,		*admiring,*
Pres. & Impf.	mirāri.	*Pres. & Impf.*	mirans.
	to be about to admire,		*about to admire,*
Fut.	miratūrus esse.	*Fut. Act.*	miratūrus, a, um.
	to have admired,		*having admired,**
Perf. & Plup.	mirātus esse.	*Perf.*	mirātus, a, um.
	to have been about to admire,		*requiring to be admired,*
Fut.-Perf.	miratūrus fuisse.	*Fut. Pass.*	mirandus, a, um.
	the necessity of admiring.	SUP.	1st. mirātum, *to admire.*
GERUND.	mirandum.		2nd. mirātu, *to be admired.*

SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS.

Semi-Deponent Verbs have the Perfect and the tenses connected with it of the Passive Form.

There are only four such verbs, *audeo*, dare; *gaudeo*, rejoice; *soleo*, am wont; and *fido*, trust.

AUDEO.

audeo, ausus, audēre, *to dare.* (*2nd Conj.*).

INDICATIVE.

	I dare or *am daring.*		*I dared* or *have dared.*
Pres.	aud-eo. aud-ēs. &c.	*Perf.*	ausus { sum. es. &c.
	I dared or *was daring.*		*I had dared.*
Impf.	aud-ēbam. aud-ēbas. &c.	*Plup.*	ausus { eram. eras. &c.
	I shall dare.		*I shall have dared.*
Fut.	aud-ēbo. aud-ēbis. &c.	*Fut.-Perf.*	ausus { ero. eris. &c.

* The perfect participle of many Deponent verbs is used passively, as comitātus (*comitor*), accompanied, partītus (*partior*), divided, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

	I may dare.		*I may be about to dare.*
Pres.	aud-eam.	*Fut.*	austūrus sim.
	aud-eas.		
	&c.		*I may have dared.*
	I might or *should dare.*	*Perf.*	ausus sim.
Impf.	aud-ērem.		
	aud-ēres.		*I should have dared.*
	&c.	*Plup.*	ausus essem.

IMPERATIVE.

	dare thou.		*dare ye.*
Pres.	*S.* aud-e, *or*, -ĕto.	*P.*	aud-ĕte, *or*, -ĕtōte.
	aud-ĕto.		audento.

INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLES.	
	to dare,		*daring,*
Pres. & Impf.	audēre.	*Pres. & Impf.*	audens (*only an adj.*)
	to be about to dare,		*about to dare,*
Fut.	austūrus esse.	*Fut.*	austūrus, a, um.
	to have dared,		*dared* or *having dared,*
Perf. & Plup.	ausus esse.	*Perf.*	ausus, a, um.
	to have been about to dare,		*the necessity of daring,*
Fut.-Perf.	austūrus fuisse.	GERUND.	audendum.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

The Irregular Verbs are *sum*, *eo*, *queo*, *volo*, *fero*, *fio*, *edo*, and their compounds.

SUM.

The inflexion of *sum* has been given already (p. 35).

The compounds of *sum*, as *absum*, I am away, *adsum*, I am present, &c., are inflected like the simple verb.

(For list of compounds, see App. B. 6.)

PROSUM.

Prosum (pro and *sum)*, I benefit, inserts *d* wherever the simple verb begins with a vowel.

prosum, profŭi, ——, prodesse, *to benefit.*

INDICATIVE.

	I benefit or *am benefiting.*		*I benefited* or *have benefited.*
	prosum.	*Perf.*	profŭi.
	prodĕs.		profuisti.
Pres.	prodest.		&c.
	prosŭmus.		
	prodestis.		
	prosunt.		
			I had benefited.
		Plup.	profuĕram.
	I benefited or *was benefiting.*		profuĕras.
Impf.	prodĕram.		&c.
	prodĕras.		
	&c.		
			I shall have benefited.
	I shall benefit.		profuĕro.
	prodĕro.		profuĕris.
	prodĕris.	*Fut.-Perf.*	profuĕrit.
Fut.	prodĕrit.		profuerĭmus.
	proderĭmus.		profuerĭtis.
	proderĭtis.		profuĕrint.
	prodĕrunt.		

SUBJUNCTIVE.

	I may benefit.		*I may be about to benefit.*
	prosim.	*Fut.*	profutūrus { sim. / sis.
	prosis.		
Pres.	prosit.		&c.
	prosĭmus.		*I may have benefited.*
	prosĭtis.	*Perf.*	profuĕrim.
	prosint.		profuĕris.
			&c.
	I might or should benefit.		*I should have benefited.*
Impf.	prodessem.	*Plup.*	profuissem.
	prodesses.		profuisses.
	&c.		&c.

IMPERATIVE.

	benefit thou.	*benefit ye.*
Pres.	*S.* prod-ĕs, *or*, -esto. prodesto.	*P.* prod-este, *or*, -estōte. prosunto.

INFINITIVE.

	to benefit.	*to have benefited.*
Pres. & Impf.	prodesse.	*Perf. & Plup.* profuisse.
	to be about to benefit.	*to have been about to benefit.*
Fut.	profutūrus esse.	*Fut.-Perf.* profutūrus fuisse.

PARTICIPLE. *about to benefit.* profutūrus, a, um.

POSSUM.

Possum = *pot-sum* (*potis*, able, and *sum*), I am able, modifies *t* of *pot* into *s* before *s* of the simple verb, strikes out *f* from the perfect and the parts formed from it, and contracts the infinitive *potesse* into *posse*.

possum, potŭi, ——, posse, *to be able.*

INDICATIVE.

	I am able or *can.*		*I shall be able.*
	possum.	*Fut.*	potĕro.
	potŭs.		
Pres.	potest.		*I have been able* or *could.*
	possŭmus.	*Perf.*	potui.
	potestis.		
	possunt.		*I had been able.*
		Plup.	potuĕram.
	I was able or *could.*		
	potĕram.		*I shall have been able.*
Impf.	potĕras.	*Fut.-Perf.*	potuĕro.
	&c.		

SUBJUNCTIVE.

I may be able.

Pres. possim.
possīs.
&c.

I might or *should be able.*

possem.
possēs.
Impf. posset.
possēmus.
possētis.
possent.

Fut. ——

I may have been able.

Perf. potuĕrim.
potuĕris.
&c.

I should have been able.

Plup. potuissem.
potuisses.
&c.

IMPERATIVE.

wanting.

INFINITIVE.

to be able.

Pres. & *Impf.* posse.

to have been able.

Perf. & *Plup.* potuisse.

EO.

Eo and its intransitive compounds, as *pereo*, perish, are only used impersonally in the passive voice; but the transitive compounds, as *ineo*, enter, have the passive complete.

In the compounds of *eo*, the perfect and the parts formed from it reject *v*, and sometimes undergo still further contraction, as *redisti*, *redissem*, *redisse*, for *redīisti*, *redīisem*, and *redīisse*. (For list of compounds, see App. B. 7.)

Ambio, I go round, is a regular verb of the Fourth Conjugation.

eo, īvi, ĭtum.	redeo, rĕdĭi, rĕdĭtum.
īre, *to go.*	redīre, *to return.*

INDICATIVE.

	I go or *am going.*	*I return* or *am returning.*
	eo.	red-eo.
	is.	red-is.
Pres.	it.	red it.
	imus.	red-imus.
	itis.	red-itis.
	eunt.	red-eunt.

	I went or *was going.*	*I returned* or *was returning.*
	ibam.	red-ibam.
	ibas.	red-ibas.
Impf.	ibat.	red-ibat.
	ibāmus.	red-ibāmus.
	ibātis.	red-ibātis.
	ibant.	red-ibant.

	I shall go.	*I shall return.*
	ibo.	red-ibo.
	ibis.	red-ibis.
Fut.	ibit.	red-ibit.
	ibimus.	red-ibimus.
	ibitis.	red-ibitis.
	ibunt.	red-ibunt.

	I went or *have gone.*	*I returned* or *have returned.*
Perf.	iv-i.	redi-i.
	iv-isti.	redi-isti.
	&c.	&c.

	I had gone.	*I had returned.*
Plup.	iv-ēram.	redi-ēram.
	iv-ēras.	redi-ēras.
	&c.	&c.

	I shall have gone.	*I shall have returned.*
Fut.-Perf.	iv-ēro.	redi-ēro.
	iv-eris.	redi-ēris.
	&c.	&c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

	I may go.	*I may return.*
	eam.	red-ĕam.
	eas.	red-ĕas.
Pres.	eat.	red-ĕat.
	eāmus.	red-eāmus.
	eātis.	red-eātis.
	ĕant.	red-ĕant.

	I might or *should go.*	*I might* or *should return.*
	īrem.	red-īrem.
	īres.	red-īres.
Impf.	īret.	red-īret.
	īrēmus.	red-īrēmus.
	īrētis.	red-īrētis.
	īrent.	red-īrent.

	I may be about to go.	*I may be about to return.*
Fut.	iturus { sim. / sis.	red-iturus { sim. / sis.
	&c.	&c.

	I may have gone.	*I may have returned.*
	iv-ĕrim.	redi-ĕrim.
Perf.	iv-ĕris.	redi-ĕris.
	&c.	&c.

	I should have gone.	*I should have returned.*
	iv-issem.	redi-issem.
Plup.	iv-isses.	redi-isses.
	&c.	&c.

IMPERATIVE.

	go thou.	*return thou.*
	I, *or*, īto.	red-i, *or*, -īto.
Pres.	īto.	red-īto.
	īte, *or*, ītōte.	red-īte, *or*, -ītōte.
	eunto.	red-eunto.

INFINITIVE.

	to go.	*to return.*
Pres. & Impf.	**īre.**	**red-īre.**
	to be about to go.	*to be about to return.*
Fut.	**iturus esse.**	**red-iturus esse.**
	to have gone.	*to have returned.*
Perf. & Plup.	**iv-isse.**	**redi-isse.**
	to have been about to go.	*to have been about to return.*
Fut.-Perf.	**iturus fuisse.**	**red-iturus fuisse.**

PARTICIPLES.

	going.	*returning.*
Pres. & Impf.	**iens,** *gen.* **euntis.**	**red-iens, -euntis.**
	about to go.	*about to return.*
Fut.	**itūrus, a, um.**	**red-itūrus, a, um.**
	(the necessity of) going.	*(the necessity of) returning.*
GER.	**eun-dum, di, &c.**	**red-eundum, di, &c.**
SUP.	(1st **ītum**; 2nd **ītu**).	(1st **red-ītum**; 2nd **red-ītu**).

QUEO.

Queo, I am able, and *nequĕo*, I am unable, are inflected like *eo*, but want imperative, participles, and gerund.

VOLO.

The compounds of *volo*, I will, or am willing, are *nolo* (*ne*=*non* and *volo*), I am unwilling, and *malo* (*mage*=*magis*, more, and *volo*) I am more willing.

vŏlo, volui, ——,	**nōlo, nolui, ——,**	**mālo, malui, ——,**
velle, *to be willing.*	**nolle,** *to be unwilling.*	**malle,** *to be more willing.*

INDICATIVE.

	I will or *am willing.*	*I am unwilling* or *will not.*	*I am more willing.*
	volo.	nolo.	malo.
	vis.	non vis.	mavis.
Pres.	vult.	non vult.	mavult.
	volŭmus.	nolŭmus.	malŭmus.
	vultis.	non vultis.	mavultis.
	volunt.	nolunt.	malunt.
	I would or *was willing.*	*I was unwilling.*	*I was more willing.*
Impf.	vol-ēbam.	nol-ēbam.	mal-ēbam.
	vol-ēbas.	nol-ēbas.	mal-ēbas.
	&c.	&c.	&c.
	I shall be willing.	*I shall be unwilling.*	*I shall be more willing.*
Fut.	vol-am.	nol-am.	mal-am.
	vol-es.	nol-es.	mal-es.
	&c.	&c.	&c.
	I have been willing.	*I have been unwilling.*	*I have been more willing.*
Perf.	volŭ-i.	nolŭ-i.	malŭ-i.
	volu-isti.	nolu-isti.	malu-isti.
	&c.	&c.	&c.
	I had been willing.	*I had been unwilling.*	*I had been more willing.*
Plup.	volu-ĕram.	nolu-ĕram.	malu-ĕram.
	volu-ĕras.	nolu-ĕras.	malu-ĕras.
	&c.	&c.	&c.
	I shall have been willing.	*I shall have been unwilling.*	*I shall have been more willing.*
Fut.-Perf.	volu-ĕro.	nolu-ĕro.	malu-ĕro.
	volu-ĕris.	nolu-ĕris.	malu-ĕris.
	&c.	&c.	&c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

	I may be willing.	*I may be unwilling.*	*I may be more willing.*
	vel-im.	nol-im.	mal-im.
	vel-īs.	nol-īs.	mal-īs.
Pres.	vol-it.	nol-it.	mal-it.
	vel-īmus.	nol-īmus.	mal-īmus.
	vel-ītis.	nol-ītis.	mal-ītis.
	vel-int.	nol-int.	mal-int.

	I might or *should be willing.*	*I might* or *should be unwilling.*	*I might* or *should be more willing.*
	vell-em.	noll-em.	mall-em.
	vell-ēs.	noll-ēs.	mall-ēs.
Impf.	vell-et.	noll-et.	mall-et.
	vell-ēmus.	noll-ēmus.	mall-ēmus.
	vell-ētis.	noll-ētis.	mall-ētis.
	vell-ent.	noll-ent.	mall-ent.
Fut.	——	——	——

	I may have been willing.	*I may have been unwilling.*	*I may have been more willing.*
Perf.	volu-ĕrim.	nolu-ĕrim.	malu-ĕrim.

	I should have been willing.	*I should have been unwilling.*	*I should have been more willing.*
Plup.	volu-issem.	nolu-issem.	malu-issem.

IMPERATIVE.

		be thou unwilling, nol-i, *or,* -īto.	
Pres.	——	——	——
		nol-īte, *or,* -ītote.	
		——	

INFINITIVE.

	to be willing,	*to be unwilling,*	*to be more willing,*
Pres. & *Impf.*	velle.	nolle.	malle.
	to have been willing,	*to have been unwilling,*	*to have been more willing,*
Perf. & *Plup.*	voluisse.	noluisse.	maluisse.

FERO.

The compounds of *fero*, I bring or bear, as *affĕro* (*ad* and *fero*), I bring to, *effĕro*, (*ex* and *fero*) I bring out, *offero* (*ob* and *fero*), I offer, &c., are inflected like the simple verb.

(For list of compounds see App. B. 8.)

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
	fĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, *to bring.*	**fĕror, lātus, ferri,** *to be brought.*
	INDICATIVE.	
	I bring or *am bringing.*	*I am (being) brought.*
	fero.	**feror.**
	fers.	**ferris,** *or,* **ferre.**
Pres.	**fert.**	**fertur.**
	ferimus.	**ferimur.**
	fertis.	**ferimini.**
	ferunt.	**feruntur.**
	I brought or *was bringing.*	*I was (being) brought.*
Impf.	**fer-ēbam.**	**fer-ēbar.**
	fer-ēbas.	**fer-ēbāris,***or,***-ēbāre.**
	&c.	&c.
	I shall bring.	*I shall be brought.*
Fut.	**fer-am.**	**fer-ar.**
	fer-es.	**fer-ēris,** *or,* **-ēre.**
	&c.	&c.
	I brought or *have brought.*	*I was* or *have been brought.*
Perf.	**tul-i.**	**latus** { **sum.** / **es.**
	tul-isti.	
	&c.	&c.
	I had brought.	*I had been brought.*
Plup.	**tul-ĕram.**	**latus** { **eram.** / **eras.**
	tul-ĕras.	
	&c.	&c.
	I shall have brought.	*I shall have been brought.*
Fut.-Perf.	**tul-ĕro.**	**latus** { **ero.** / **eris.**
	tul-ĕris.	
	&c.	&c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

	I may bring.	*I may be brought.*
Pres.	fer-am.	fer-ar.
	fer-as.	fer-āris, *or*, -āre.
	&c.	&c.
	I might or *should bring.*	*I might* or *should be brought.*
	ferr-em.	ferr-er.
	ferr-es.	ferr-ēris, *or*, -ēre.
Impf.	ferr-et.	ferr-ētur.
	ferr-ēmus.	ferr-ēmur.
	ferr-ētis.	ferr-emini.
	ferr-ent.	ferr-entur.
	I may be about to bring.	
Fut.	laturus sim.	———
	I may have brought.	*I may have been brought.*
Perf.	tul-ērim.	latus sim.
	I should have brought.	*I should have been brought.*
Plup.	tul-issem.	latus essem.

IMPERATIVE.

	bring thou.	*be thou brought.*
	fer,* *or*, ferto.	ferre, *or*, fertor.
Pres.	ferto.	fertor.
	ferte, *or*, fertōte.	ferimini.
	ferunto.	feruntor.

INFINITIVE.

	to bring.	*to be brought.*
Pres. & Impf.	ferre.	ferri.
	to be about to bring.	*to be about to be brought.*
Fut.	laturus esse.	latum iri.
	to have brought.	*to have been brought.*
Perf. & Plup.	tulisse.	latus esse.
	to have been about to bring.	
Fut.-Perf.	laturus fuisse.	

* Four verbs, *dico*, *duco*, *facio*, and *fero*, have short forms in 2nd sing. pres. imperat., *dīc*, *dūc*, *fac*, and *fer*. So in the compounds.

PARTICIPLES.

	bringing,		*brought,*
Pres. & Impf.	ferens.	*Perf.*	latus, a, um.
	about to bring,		*requiring to be brought,*
Fut.	laturus, a, um.	*Fut.*	ferendus, a, um.

GERUNDS. ferend-um, -i, &c.
SUPINES. 1st. latum; 2d. latu.

FIO.

Fio, I am made, or I become, is used as the passive of *facio*, I make.

In the compounds of *facio* which retain the form *facio*, the passive is conjugated after *fio*, but in the compounds which change *facio* into *ficio*, the passive is formed regularly. Thus, *calefacio*, I warm,—pass., *calefio*, *calefactus*, *calefĭĕri;* but *efficio*, I accomplish,—pass., *efficior*, *effectus*, *effici*.

fĭo, factus, fĭĕri, *to be made* or *to become.*

INDICATIVE.

	I become or *am becoming.*		*I shall become.*
	fĭo.	*Fut.*	fĭ-am, -es, &c.
	fĭs.		*I became* or *have become.*
Pres.	fĭt.	*Perf.*	factus sum.
	fĭmus.		
	fĭtis.		*I had become.*
	fĭunt.	*Plup.*	factus eram.
	I became or *was becoming.*		*I shall have become.*
Impf.	fĭē-bam, -bas, &c.	*Fut.-Perf.*	factus ero.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

	I may become.		*I may have become.*
Pres.	fĭ-am, -as, &c.	*Perf.*	factus { sim. sis. &c.
	I might or *should become.*		
	fĭĕrem.		
	fĭĕres.		*I should have become.*
Impf.	fĭĕret.	*Plup.*	factus { essem. esses. &c.
	fĭerēmus.		
	fĭerētis.		
	fĭĕrent.		

IMPERATIVE.

	become thou.	*become ye.*
Pres.	fī, *or*, fīto.	fīte, *or*, fītōte.
	fīto.	fīunto.

INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLES.	
	to become,	*made* or *having become.*	
Pres. & Impf.	fĭĕri.	*Perf.*	factus, a, um.
	to be about to become,		
Fut.	factum īri.	*requiring to be made.*	
	to have become,	*Fut.*	faciendus, a, um.
Perf. & Plup.	factus esse.		

EDO.

Edo, I eat, is a regular verb of the Third Conjugation, but, besides the regular forms, it has also contracted forms which coincide with those parts of *sum* which begin with *es*. So also in the compounds, *comĕdo*, *exĕdo*, &c.

ēdo, ēdi, ēsum, edĕre *or* esse, *to eat.*

INDICATIVE.

	I eat or *am eating.*		*I shall eat.*
	edo.	*Fut.*	ed-am, -es, &c.
	edis, *or*, ēs.		
Pres.	edit, *or*, est.		*I ate* or *have eaten.*
	edĭmus.	*Perf.*	ēd-i.
	edĭtis, *or*, estis.		
	edunt.		*I had eaten.*
		Plup.	ed-ĕram.
	I ate or *was eating.*		
Impf.	ed-ēbam.		*I shall have eaten.*
		Fut.-Perf.	ed-ĕro.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

	I may eat.		*I may be about to eat.*
Pres.	ed-am, -as, &c.	*Fut.*	esūrus sim.
	I might or *should eat.*		*I may have eaten.*
	edĕrem, *or*, essem.	*Perf.*	ed-erim.
Impf.	edĕres, *or*, esses.		
	ēdĕret, *or*, esset.		*I should have eaten.*
	&c. &c.	*Plup.*	ed-issem.

INFINITIVE.

	to eat,		*to have eaten,*
Pres. & Impf.	**edĕre**, *or*, **esse**.	*Perf. & Plup.*	**edisse**.
	to be about to eat,		*to have been about to eat,*
Fut.	**esūrus esse**.	*Fut.-Perf.*	**esūrus fuisse**.

PARTICIPLES.		GERUNDS.	
	eating,		*the necessity of eating,*
Pres. & Impf.	**edens**.		**edendum, di**, &c.
	about to eat,	SUPINES.	
Fut.	**esūrus**.	*1st* **ēsum**, *2nd* ——.	

Note.—In the passive, we find pres. ind., 3rd. sing., *editur* or *estur*, and impf. sub., 3rd. sing., *ederētur* or *essetur*.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Many verbs, which form their tenses regularly, are more or less defective; but, of these, Preteritive verbs, Impersonal verbs, and verbs specially Defective, particularly demand attention.

PRETERITIVE VERBS.

The verbs, *coepi*, *memini*, and *odi*, have for the most part only the Preterite, or Perfect, and the parts formed from it, and are hence called Preteritive verbs.

COEPI.	**MEMINI.**	**ODI.**
coepi, coepisse, *to have begun.*	**memĭni, meminisse,** *to remember* or *have remembered.*	**odi, odisse,** *to hate,* or *have hated.*

INDICATIVE.

	I have begun.	*I remember* or *have remembered.*	*I hate* or *have hated.*
Perf.	**coep-i, -isti**, &c.	**memĭn-i, -isti**, &c.	**od-i, -isti**, &c.
	I had begun.	*I remembered* or *had remembered.*	*I hated* or *had hated.*
Plup.	**coep-ĕram, -ĕras**, &c.	**memĭn-ĕram, -ĕras**, &c.	**od-ĕram, -ĕras**, &c

	I shall have begun.	*I shall remember* or *shall have remembered.*	*I shall hate* or *shall have hated.*
Fut.-Perf.	coep-ĕro, -ĕris, &c.	memin-ĕro, -ĕris, &c.	od-ĕro, -ĕris, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

	I may be about to begin,		*I may be about to hate.*
Fut.	coepturus sim.	——	osurus sim.
Perf.	*I may have begun.* coep-ĕrim, -ĕris, &c.	*I may remember* or *may have remembered.* memin-ĕrim, -ĕris, &c.	*I may hate* or *may have hated.* od-ĕrim, -ĕris, &c.
Plup.	*I should have begun.* coep-issem, -isses, &c.	*I should remember* or *should have remembered.* memin-issem, -isses, &c.	*I should hate* or *should have hated.* od-issem, -isses, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	——	*remember thou.* memento.	——
	——	*remember ye.* mementōte.	——

INFINITIVE.

Fut.	*to be about to begin.* coepturus esse.	——	*to be about to hate.* osurus esse.
Perf.	*to have begun.* coepisse.	*to remember* or *have remembered.* meminisse.	*to hate* or *have hated.* odisse.
Fut.-Perf.	*to have been about to begin.* coepturus fuisse.	——	*to have been about to hate.* osurus fuisse.

PARTICIPLES.

	about to begin.		*about to hate.*
Fut.	**coepturus, a, um.**	——	**osurus, a, um**
	begun.		
Perf.	**coeptus, a, um.**	——	——

Note.—*Coepi* has a passive form, *coeptus sum*, which is used before *passive* infinitives, as *urbs coepta est obsidari*, the city began to be besieged. The parts in which *coepi*, *memini*, and *odi* are defective may be supplied by *incipio*, *recordor*, and *habere odio* (dat.) respectively.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Impersonal verbs are so called because they do not admit of a personal subject. They are used only in the third person singular, and those of the active form want the imperative (for which the subjunctive is employed), the participles, the gerund, and the supines.

Purely impersonal verbs are such as *fulgŭrat*, it lightens; *tonat*, it thunders; *pluit*, it rains; and many other verbs referring to the weather; also the following:—

libet mihi, *it is pleasing to me, I please.*
licet mihi, *it is lawful to me, I am allowed, I may.*
miseret me, *it pities me, I pity.*
oportet me, *it behoves me, I ought, I should.*
poenitet me, *it repents me, I repent.*
piget me, *it annoys me, I dislike.*
pudet me, *it ashames me, I am ashamed.*
rĕfert meā, *it concerns me, I am concerned.*
taedet me, *it disgusts me, I am disgusted.*

POENITET.	**LICET.**
poenitet, poenitŭit, poenitēre, *it repents.*	**licet, licŭit, licēre,** *it is lawful.*

INDICATIVE.

	poenitet me, *I repent.*	**licet mihi,** *I am allowed.*
	poenitet te, *thou repentest.*	**licet tibi,** *thou art allowed.*
Pres.	**poenitet illum,** *he repents.*	**licet illi,** *he is allowed.*
	poenitet nos, *we repent.*	**licet nobis,** *we are allowed.*
	poenitet vos, *ye repent.*	**licet vobis,** *ye are allowed.*
	poenitet illos, *they repent.*	**licet illis,** *they are allowed.*
	I was repenting.	*I was allowed.*
Impf.	**poenitebat me,** &c.	**licebat mihi,** &c.
	I shall repent.	*I shall be allowed.*
Fut.	**poenitebit me,** &c.	**licebit mihi,** &c.
	I have repented.	*I have been allowed.*
Perf.	**poenituit me,** &c.	**licuit mihi,** &c.
	I had repented.	*I had been allowed.*
Plup.	**poenituerat me,** &c.	**licuerat mihi,** &c.
	I shall have repented.	*I shall have been allowed.*
Fut.-Perf.	**poenituerit me,** &c.	**licuerit mihi,** &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

	I may repent.	*I may be allowed.*
Pres.	**poeniteat me,** &c.	**liceat mihi,** &c.
	I might repent.	*I might be allowed.*
Impf.	**poeniteret me,** &c.	**liceret mihi,** &c.
	I may have repented.	*I may have been allowed.*
Perf.	**poenituerit me,** &c.	**licuerit mihi,** &c.
	I should have repented.	*I should have been allowed.*
Plup.	**poenituisset me,** &c.	**licuisset mihi,** &c.

INFINITIVE.

	that I repent.	*that I am allowed.*
Pres.	**poenitere me,** &c.	**licere mihi,** &c.
	that I was repenting.	*that I was allowed.*
Impf.	**poenitere me,** &c.	**licere mihi,** &c.
	that I have repented.	*that I have been allowed.*
Perf.	**poenituisse me,** &c.	**licuisse mihi,** &c.
	that I had repented.	*that I had been allowed.*
Plup.	**poenituisse me,** &c.	**licuisse mihi,** &c.

Some verbs are used impersonally only in a particular sense, as :—

accēdit, *it is added.*
accidit, *it happens.*
appāret, *it is plain.*
attinet, *it concerns.*
contingit, *it happens.*
convēnit, *it is agreed.*
constat, *it is certain.*
decet, *it becomes.*
dedēcet, *it is unbecoming.*
delectat, *it delights.*
evēnit, *it comes about.*
expēdit, *it is expedient.*
fit, *it comes about.*
interest, *it concerns.*
juvat, *it delights.*
liquet, *it is clear.*
patet, *it is manifest.*
placet, *it pleases.*
praestat, *it is better.*
restat, *it remains.*
stat, *it is determined.*
vidētur, *it seems good.*

INTEREST AND REFERT.

Interest, it concerns, instead of governing any case of the personal pronouns, takes a part of the possessive adjectives, *meā*, *tuā*, *suā*, *nostrā*, and *vestrā*, but governs the genitive of nouns and other pronouns.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

interest meā, *I am concerned.*
interest tuā, *thou art concerned.*
interest illīus, *he is concerned.*
interest nostrā, *we are concerned.*
interest vestrā, *ye are concerned.*
interest illōrum, *they are concerned.*

&c.

Rĕfert (rei and *fert)*, mentioned before, is gone through in the same way.

Neuter verbs, and verbs governing only the dative in the active voice, are used impersonally in the passive.

Thus, *curro* (*neut.*), I run, pass. *currĭtur ; currebatur ;* &c., it is run, *or* there is a running ; it was run, *or* there was a running, &c. *Pareo* (*governing dat. only*) I obey, pass. *parētur*, it is obeyed, obedience is given.

PARETUR.

Parētur, Paritum, Parēri, *it is obeyed, obedience is given.*

INDICATIVE.

I am obeyed.

Pres.
- **parētur mihi.**
- **parētur tibi.**
- **parētur illi.**
- **parētur nobis.**
- **parētur vobis.**
- **parētur illis.**

Impf. *I was (being) obeyed.* **parebatur mihi, &c.**

Fut. *I shall be obeyed.* **parebitur mihi, &c.**

Perf. *I was* or *have been obeyed.* **paritum est mihi, &c.**

Plup. *I had been obeyed.* **paritum erat mihi, &c.**

Fut.-Perf. *I shall have been obeyed.* **paritum fuĕrit mihi, &c.**

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. *I may be obeyed.* **pareātur mihi, &c.**

Impf. *I might* or *should be obeyed.* **parērētur mihi, &c.**

Perf. *I may have been obeyed.* **paritum sit mihi, &c.**

Plup. *I should have been obeyed.* **paritum esset mihi, &c.**

IMPERATIVE.

(Subjunctive used instead.)

INFINITIVE.

Pres. *that I am being obeyed.* **parēri mihi, &c.**

Impf. *that I was (being) obeyed.* **parēri mihi, &c.**

Fut. *that I shall be obeyed.* **paritum iri mihi, &c.**

Perf. *that I was* or *have been obeyed.* **paritum esse mihi, &c.**

Plup. *that I had been obeyed.* **paritum esse mihi, &c.**

VERBS SPECIALLY DEFECTIVE.

AIO, *I say.*

INDICATIVE.

Pres.	aio,	ais,	ait;	———,	———,	aiunt.
Impf.	aiēbam,	aiebas,	aiebat;	aiebamus,	aiebatis,	aiebant.
Perf.	———,	———,	ait;	———	———,	———.

Pres. Part. aiens.

In this verb, *i* before a vowel is to be pronounced as *y*. Thus *aio* is pronounced *a-yo*, *aiunt*, *a-yunt*.

INQUAM, *I say.*

INDICATIVE.

Pres.	inquam,	inquis,	inquit;	inquimus,	inquitis,	inquiunt.
Impf.	———,	———,	inquiebat;	———,	———,	inquiebant.
Fut.	———,	inquies,	inquiet;	———,	———,	———.
Perf.	———,	inquisti,	inquit;	———,	———,	———.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres.	———,	inque,	inquito;	———,	inquite,	———.

FARI, *to say.*

INDICATIVE.		IMPERATIVE.	
Pres.	faris, fatur.	*Pres.*	fare.
Fut.	fabor, fabitur.		
Perf.	fatus sum, &c.		INFINITIVE.
Plup.	fatus eram, &c.	*Pres.*	fari.
SUBJUNCTIVE.			PARTICIPLES.
Perf.	fatus sim, &c.	*Pres.*	(fans).
Plup.	fatus essem, &c.	*Perf.*	fatus.
		Fut.-Pass.	(fandus).

GERUNDS. *gen.* fandi, *abl.* fando. 2nd sup. fatu.

This verb is chiefly confined to poetry. Almost the only parts found in prose are *fatur*, *fatus*, and *fando*.

QUAESO, *I pray.*

INDICATIVE.

Pres. **quaeso, ———, ——— ; quaesūmus, ———, ———.**

AUSIM, *I should venture.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. **ausim, ausis, ausit ; ———, ———, ausint.**

AVE, *hail!* **SALVE**, *hail!* **VALE**, *farewell!*

IMPERATIVE.

ave, avēte. salve, salvēte. vale, valēte.

INFINITIVE.

avēre. salvēre. valēre.

Apăge, begone! has besides *apagĕte.*

Several very common verbs are defective in certain parts, thus, *do*, I give, wants 1st sing., pres. ind. and subj. pass.; *scio*, I know, wants 1st form of the 2nd sing. imperat., and the pres. partic. *Sciens* and *nesciens* are used as adjectives exclusively; *quum sciam, nesciam; scias, nescias;* &c., or *quum scirem, nescirem; scires, nescires;* &c., being used instead. *Putans* is not used as the pres. part. of *puto*, think, but of *puto*, prune.

CHAPTER VII.—ADVERBS.

FORMATION OF ADVERBS.

Many Adverbs are formed from Adjectives and Participles. Adjectives of the *first and second* declension form their Adverbs by adding *e* and sometimes *o* to the stem, as *rectus*, adv. *rect-e; miser*, adv. *misĕr-e; rarus*, adv. *rar-o.* But *bonus* forms *bene; multus, multum;* and *firmus, firme* and *firmĭter.*

Adjectives and Participles of the *third* declension form their Adverbs by adding *er* or *iter* to the stem, according as it ends in *t* or not, as *ardens*, adv. *ardent-er; celer*, adv. *celer-iter.* Some, however, have their adverbs the same as the accusative singular neuter, as *recens*, adv. *recens; facĭlis*, adv. *facile.* But *difficĭlis* forms *difficulter.*

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

The Comparative of an Adverb is the accusative singular neuter of the Comparative of the Adjective.

The Superlative of an Adverb is formed by adding *e* to the stem of the Superlative of the Adjective.

Pos.	*Com.*	*Sup.*
recte.	rectius.	rectissime.
misĕre.	miserius.	miserrime.
raro.	rarius.	rarissime.
bene.	melius.	optime.
ardenter.	ardentius.	ardentissime.
celeriter.	celerius.	celerrime.
recens.	recentius.	recentissime.
facile.	facilius.	facillime.
difficulter.	difficilius.	difficillime.
prope.	propius.	proxime.
(nove).	———	novissime.
(paulum).	minus.	minime.

The following Adverbs are compared irregularly :—

P.	*C.*	*S.*
multum.	plus.	plurimum.
magnopĕre.	(majŏre opere).	maximopĕre.
———	magis.	maxime.
———	prius.	primum.

The following are compared as if formed from Adjectives :—

P.	*C.*	*S.*
saepe.	saepius.	saepissime.
diu.	diutius.	diutissime.
nuper.	——	nuperrime.

CLASSIFICATION OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs are divided into Adverbs of Affirmation, Negation, Interrogation, Place, Time, Manner, and Degree.

Adverbs of Affirmation.

certe, *certainly.*
etiam, *yes, even.*
nae, *verily.*
nempe, *to be sure.*
nimīrum, *doubtless.*
scilĭcet, videlĭcet, } *clearly.*
profecto, *assuredly.*
quidem, equidem, } *indeed.*
sane, *truly.*
utĭque, *at any rate.*

Adverbs of Negation.

non, haud, } *not.*
nē, *not* (in prohibitions).
ne—quidem, *not even.*
nequāquam, *not at all.*
immo, *nay rather.*

Adverbs of Interrogation.

-nĕ ; as *Audisne?* Do you hear? (question for mere information). *Nonne audis?* Don't you hear? You hear, don't you? (implying an affirmative answer).

num ; as *Num audis?* You don't hear, do you? (implying a negative answer).

quid, quidnam, cur, quare, } *why?*
quin, *why not?*
qui, quomŏdo, } *how? in what manner?*
quam, *how? to what degree?*
quantopere, *how greatly?*
quando, *when?*
quousque, quamdĭu, } *how long?*
quoties, *how often?*

Adverbs of Place.

(from *hic*).
hic, *here.*
huc, *hither.*
hinc, *hence.*
hac, *this way.*

(from *ille*).
illic, *there.*
illuc, *thither.*
illinc, *thence.*
illac, *that way.*

(from *iste*).
istic, *there.*
istuc, *thither.*
istinc, *thence.*
istac, *that way.*

(from *is*).
ibi, *there.*
eo, *thither.*
inde, *thence.*
ea, *that way.*

(from *idem*).
ibidem, *in the same place.*
eōdem, *to the same place.*
indĭdem, *from the same place.*
eădem, *the same way.*

(from *qui*).
ubi, *where.*
quo, *whither.*
unde, *whence.*
qua, *the way by which.*

(from *quicunque*).
ubicunque, *wherever.*
quocunque, *whithersoever.*

(from *quis*).
ubi, *where?*
quo, *whither?*
unde, *whence?*
qua, *what way?*

(from *quisque*).
ubique, *everywhere.*
undique, *from every side.*

(from *aliquis*).
aliquŏbi, *somewhere or other.*
aliquo, *somewhither.*
alicunde, *from some place.*
aliqua, *some way.*

(from *uterque*).
utrobique, *at either place.*
utrinque, *from either side.*

citra, *on this side.*
citro, *in this direction.*
ultra, *on that side.*
ultro, *in that direction.*
foris, *outside.*
foras, *to the outside.*
usquam, *anywhere.*
nusquam, *nowhere.*
intus, *within.*
prae, *before.*
pone, *behind.*
&c.

Adverbs of Time.

Quando, *when?*
nunc, *now, at this time.*
jam, *now, already.*
modo, *just now.*
mox, *presently, by and by.*
interim, interea, } *in the meantime.*
ante, antea, *before.*
olim, *formerly, hereafter.*
pridem, *long ago.*
nondum, *not yet.*
quondam, *once on a time.*
hinc, *after this.*
abhinc, *from this time (backwards).*
dehinc, *henceforth.*
simul, *at the same time.*
tum, tunc, *then.*
inde, deinde, subinde, } *thereafter.*
deinceps, *in succession.*
vicissim, *by turns.*
post, postea, *afterwards.*
posthac, *hereafter.*
denique, demum, } *at last.*
tandem, *at length.*
unquam, *at any time.*
nunquam, *never.*
semper, *always.*

statim, confestim, continuo, extemplo, illico, protinus, } *immediately.*
cito, *soon.*
quam primum, *as soon as possible.*
aliquando, *sometime.*
hodie, *to-day.*
heri, *yesterday.*
cras, *to-morrow.*
pridie, *the day before.*
postridie, *the day after.*
interdiu, *by day.*
noctu, *by night.*
mane, *in the morning.*
vespĕri, *in the evening.*
Quamdiu, *how long?*
aliquamdiu, *for a while.*
adhuc, *hitherto.*
diu, *for a long time.*

parumper, paulisper, } *for a short time.*
non jam, *no longer.*
jam dudum, *now for a while.*
Quoties, *how often?*
toties, *so often.*
aliquoties, *several times.*
saepe, *often.*
crebro, *frequently.*
identidem, *repeatedly.*
semel, *once, for one time.*
bis, &c., *twice, &c.*
itĕrum, rursus, } *again.*
interdum, nonnunquam, } *sometimes.*
plerumque, *generally.*
quotidie, indies, } *every day.*
quotannis, *every year.*
raro, *seldom.*
&c.

Adverbs of Manner.

Quomŏdo, *how?*
aliter, secus, } *otherwise.*
item, *likewise.*
aliŏquin, *in other respects.*
ita, sic, tam, } *so.*
quemadmŏdum, *even as.*
ut, quam, } *as.*
etiam, vel, } *even.*
tanquam, quasi, } *as if.*

sicut, velut, sicŭti, velŭti, } *even as.*
ceu, *as it were.*
utcunque, *however.*
forte, *by chance.*
forsitan, fortasse, } *perhaps.*
nequicquam, frustra, } *in vain.*
gratis, *for nothing.*
palam, *openly.*
clam, *secretly.*
vulgo, *commonly.*
&c.

Adverbs of Degree.

Quam, *how? to what degree?*
quantopĕre, *how greatly?*
adeo, tam, } *to such a degree.*
admŏdum, *considerably, very.*
imprimis, praecipue, praesertim, } *especially.*
dumtaxat, *precisely, only.*

magnopĕre, *greatly.*
magis, *more.*
maxime, *most, chiefly.*
valde, *extremely.*
minus, *less.*
minime, *least.*
nimis, nimium, } *too much, excessively.*
parum, *too little.*

penĭtus, plane, omnĭno, prorsus, } *utterly, quite, altogether.*
potius, satius, } *rather.*
potissimum, *chiefly.*
satis, *enough.*
fere, ferme, pene, prope, } *almost.*
solum, modo, tantum, } *only.*
tantummŏdo, }
tantum non, *all but.*
tantopĕre, *so much.*
vix, *scarcely.*
paullum, *little.*
paullulum, *very little.*
&c.

Very many Adverbs of Manner and Degree are formed from adjectives and participles.

CHAPTER VIII.—PREPOSITIONS.

The Prepositions governing the Accusative.

ad, *to, at.*
apud, *at, with.*
ante, *before.*
adversus, *towards, against.*
contra, *against.*
cis, **citra**, } *on this side.*
circa, **circum**, } *around.*
erga, *towards* (of feelings).
extra, *outside.*
inter, *between, among.*
intra, *inside, within.*
infra, *beneath.*
juxta, *nigh to.*
ob, **propter**, } *on account of.*
per, *through.*
praeter, *except, past.*
penes, *in the power of.*
post, *after.*
pone, *behind.*
prope, *near.*
secundum, { *according to, along, next after.*
supra, *above.*
trans, *across.*
ultra, *beyond.*

The Prepositions governing the Ablative.

a, ab, abs, *from, by.*
absque, *without.*
cum, *with.*
clam, *without the knowledge of.*
coram, *in presence of.*
de, *concerning.*
e, ex, *out of.*
pro, *in behalf of, instead of.*
prae, *before.*
palam, *with the knowledge of.*
sine, *without.*
tenus, *up to.*

The Prepositions governing the Accusative or Ablative.

in,	{ acc., *into, against.*	**super,**	{ acc., *upon* (motion to).
	{ abl., *in, on.*		{ abl., *upon* (rest).
sub,	{ acc., *under* (motion to).	**subter,**	*beneath.*
	{ abl., *under* (rest).		

Note 1.—*Adversus* in the sense of "towards" has its parts often separated by the governed noun, as *ad urbem versus*, towards the city.

Note 2.—The form *a* is never used before a vowel or *h*, and generally not before *j*. The form *abs* is never used but before *te* (abl. of *tu*).

Note 3.—The form *e* is never used before a vowel or *h*.

Note 4.—*Cum* always follows its case when used with the singular or plural of the personal pronouns, *ego, tu, sui*, and usually does so with the relative and interrogative pronouns, *qui* and *quis*, as *tecum, vobiscum, quocum, quibuscum.*

Note 5.—*Tenus* follows its case, as *mento tenus*, up to the chin. It governs also the genitive plural of things that go in pairs, as *oculorum tenus*, up to the eyes.

PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

A is used before *m* and *v*, as *a-moveo, a-vŏco*. *Abs* is used before *c, q*, and *t*, as *abs-condo, abs-que, abs-terreo*. *Ab* is used before other letters, as *ab-eo, ab-do, ab-sum*. *Au* is used for *ab* in *au-fĕro, au-fugio*.

Ad remains before vowels, and *b, d, j, m*, and *v*, as *ad-eo, ad-bĭbo, ad-do, ad-jaceo, ad-moveo, ad-venio*. It becomes *ac* before *q*, as *ac-quiesco*. Before other consonants *d* is assimilated, as *af-figo, ag-gredior, al-lŏquor, an-necto, ap-pĕto, ar-rideo, as-sĕquor, at-tendo*. Before *gn*, and usually before *sp* and *sc*, *d* is omitted, as *a-gnomen, a-spicio, a-scisco*. *Ad* becomes *ă* in *ă-perio* (= *ad-pario*).

Cum becomes *co* before vowels and *h*, as *co-arguo, co-haereo*, but *com* in *com-ĕdo* and derivatives from *eo*, as *com-es, com-itium*. *Com* is used before *b, m*, and *p*, as *com-bĭbo, com-moveo, com-porto*. Before *l* and *r*, *m* is assimilated, as *col-lŏquor, cor-rumpo*. *Con* is used before other letters, as *con-cŏdo, con-dūco, con-jungo, con-necto, con-quĕror, con-sĕro*.

Ex is put before vowels and *c, p, q, s*, and *t*, as *ex-inde, ex-cĕdo, ex-pello, ex-quĭro, ex-sĕquor, ex-tendo*, except in *e-poto, e-scendo*. Before *f*, *x* is assimilated, as *ef-fĕro*. *E* is put before all other letters, as *e-dūco, e-radīco*.

In becomes *im* before *b* and *p*, as *im-bĭbo, im-pōno*, and *i* before *gn*, as *i-gnāvus*. Before *l, m*, and *r*, *n* is assimilated, as *il-lĭgo, im-mineo, ir-rideo*. *In* is unchanged before other letters, as *in-dūco, in-spīro*.

Inter remains unchanged, except in *intel-lĭgo* for *inter-lĕgo*.

Ob assimilates *b* before *c, f*, and *p*, as *oc-curro, of-fĕro, op-pōno*, becomes *obs* in *obs-olesco, os* in *os-tendo*, and *ŏ* in *o-mitto* and *o-perio*. In other cases *ob* remains unchanged, as *ob-tineo, ob-sto*.

Per sometimes assimilates *r* before *l*, as *pel-lucĭdus*, and becomes *pĕ* in *pe-jĕro* (= *per-juro*).

Post remains unchanged, but becomes *po* in *po-mœrium* and *po-meridianus*.

Pro inserts *d* before a vowel, as *prod-eo*, and becomes *por* in *por-rigo* (= *pro-rigo*), *por-tendo* (= *pro-tendo*), *por-ricio* (= *pro-jicio*), and *pol* in *pol-liceor* (= *pro-liceor*).

Sub assimilates *b* before *c*, *f*, *g*, *m*, *p*, and *r*, as *suc-cēdo*, *suf-fundo*, *sug-gĕro*, *sum-moveo*, *sup-plico*, *sur-ripio*, and becomes *sus* in *sus-cipio*, *sus-pendo*.

Trans often becomes *tra*, as *tra-no*.

INSEPARABLE PARTICLES.

Amb, around, is used before vowels, as *amb-ĭgo* (= *amb-ăgo*), though *am-ictio* (= *amb-jicio*); becomes *am* before *p*, as *am-plector*, and *an* before *c*, *q*, and *f*, as *an-ceps*, *an-quīro*, *an-fractus*.

Dis, asunder, is put before *c*, *j*, *p*, *q*, *t*, and *s*, followed by a vowel, as *dis-cēdo*, *dis-jicio*, *dis-pūto*, *dis-quīro*, *dis-trăho*, *dis-sentio*, but *di-judico*. Before *f*, *s* is assimilated, as *dif-ficilis*, and becomes *r* in *dir-imo*. *Di* is used in other cases, as *di-moveo*, *di-sto*.

Re, back, or again, as *re-cēdo*, *re-pĕto*, becomes *red* before a vowel, and sometimes before *d*, as *red-eo*, *red-do*.

Se, apart, remains unchanged, but becomes *sed* in *sed-itio*.

CHAPTER IX.—CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions are divided into *Co-ordinative*, or those which connect words or sentences together, and *Sub-ordinative*, or those which connect the dependent with the principal clause of a sentence.

Co-ordinative Conjunctions are Additive, Alternative, Negative, Adversative, and Inferential.

Additive Conjunctions.

et, atque, ac, -que, *and.*

aeque atque *or* ac, pariter atque *or* ac, *as well as.*

quoque, etiam, necnon, *also.*

quinetiam, insŭper, *moreover.*

item, itĭdem, simul, *likewise.*

denique, *finally.*

deinde, *thereafter.*

ut, *as.*

Alternative Conjunctions.

aut, vel, -ve, *or,*

sive, seu, an, *or (whether).*

Negative Conjunctions.

neque, nec, *nor, and not.*

Adversative Conjunctions.

sed, *but (on the contrary).*
cetĕrum, *but (for the rest).*
autem, *however.*
at, ast, *but yet.*
attămen, atqui, } *but for all that.*
tamen, nihilomĭnus, } *nevertheless.*
vero, verum, *but in fact.*
at vero, verumtămen, } *but yet in fact.*
verumenimvĕro, { *but in solemn truth.*

Inferential Conjunctions.

igĭtur, ităque, } *accordingly, therefore.*
idĕo, idcirco, ergo, proinde, } *therefore.*
quamōbrem, quapropter, quocirca, } *wherefore.*

Note.—Of the co-ordinative conjunctions, *autem, enim, quoque,* and *vero* are not placed first in their clause, and *tamen* only when emphatic.

Double Co-ordinative Conjunctions.

et—et, et—que, (que—que), quum—tum, tum—tum, simul—simul, qua—qua, } *both—and, as well—as.*
neque—neque, nec—nec, neque—nec, } *neither—nor.*
et—neque, { *on the one hand—and not on the other hand.*
neque—et, { *not on the one hand—and on the other hand.*
aut—aut, vel—vel, } *either—or.*
utrum—an, -nĕ—an, } *whether—or?*
sive—sive, (seu—seu) } *whether—or.*
modo—modo, *at one time—at another time.*
non modo *or* solum—sed *or* verum etiam, *not only—but also.*

Subordinative Conjunctions are Causal, Conditional, Concessive, Final, and Temporal.

Causal Conjunctions.

quod, quia, } *because.*
quonĭam, quum, } *since, seeing that.*
quippe, utpote, } *inasmuch as.*
quandoquĭdem, *since indeed.*
nam, namque, enim, etĕnim, } *for.*
neque enim, *for not.*

Conditional Conjunctions.

si, *if*.
quod si, sin, } *but if*.
sin minus, *but if not*.
nisi, ni, *unless*.
quasi, *as if*.

dummŏdo, dum, modo, } *provided that*.
dummodo ne, dum ne, modo ne, } *provided that not*.

Concessive Conjunctions.

etsi, quanquam, } *though, although*.
licet, quamvis, } *though, although*.
quum, ut, } *though, although*.

Final Conjunctions.

ut, ŭti, (*so*) *that* (of consequence).
ut non, (*so*) *that not* (of consequence).
ut, ŭti, (*in order*) *that* (of purpose).
nĕ, ut ne, } *lest*, (*in order*) *that not* (of purpose).
neve, neu, } *and lest, and* (*in order*) *that not*.
quo, *in order that*.
quominus, *in order that not*.
quin, *in such a way that not*.

Temporal Conjunctions.

quum, ubi, } *when*.
quandocunque, ubicunque, } *whenever*.
antĕquam, priusquam, } *before*.
postquam *or* posteaquam, *after*.
quum primum, simulac *or* -atque, } *as soon as*.
quoad, donec, } *as long as, until*.
dum, *while, until*.
quamdiu, *as long as*.
quoties, *as often as*.

CHAPTER X.—INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections express—

1. Joy, as io, euoe, evax, *hurrah!*

2. Grief, as hei, heu, eheu, ohe, pro *or* proh, vae, vah, *alas!*

3. Wonder, as O *or* oh, *O!* en, ecce, *lo!* papae, *strange!*

4. Approbation, as euge, *well done!*

5. Aversion, as apăge, *avaunt! away!*

6. Calling Attention, as O *or* oh, *O!* heus, *holla!* eho, *ho!*

Besides these indeclinable words, other parts of speech are used as Interjections, as—

quid, *what!*	miserabile, *sad!*
malum, *the mischief!*	quaesŭmus, quaeso, *pray!*
indignum, *for shame!*	
infandum, *monstrous!*	cito, *quick!*

Invocations of the gods are also used as mere Interjections, as—hercule, mehercule, mehercules, *so help me, Hercules!* me dius fidius (= me Διὸς filius (juvet)), *so help me, Jove's son* (Hercules). According to others, dius fidius = *god of good faith* (Hercules).

mecastor, ecastor, *by Castor!*	pol, *by Pollux!*
	edepol, *by the temple of Pollux!*

pro dii immortales, *ye immortal gods!*

PART II.

SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I.—CASE-CONSTRUCTION.

I.—*Concord.*

1. An adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case; as,—

Vir bonus, A good man.

Lata regna, Broad kingdoms.

Note.—An Infinitive may take the place of the Noun, and is construed as singular and neuter; as, *Turpe est mentīri*, To lie is base, It is base to lie, or, Lying is base.

2. A finite verb has its subject in the nominative, and agrees with it in number and person; as,—

Ego lego, I read.

Vos scrībĭtis, You write.

Castra capta sunt, The camp was taken.

Note 1.—A finite verb is one in the indicative, subjunctive, or imperative mood.

Note 2.—A collective noun may have a plural verb, if the reference is rather to the individual parts than to the whole in a mass; as, *Magna pars vulnerāti sunt*, A great part were wounded.

3. A verb in the infinitive has its subject in the accusative; as,—

Gaudeo te valēre, I am glad that you are well.

Scio puellas ventūras esse, I know that the girls will come.

4. The relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; as,—

Ego qui doceo, I who teach.

Libri quos legĭmus, The books which we read.

5. Two or more subjects in the singular number, connected by the conjunctions, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, &c., have a plural adjective, relative, or verb; as,—

Petrus et Joannes qui sunt docti, Peter and John who are learned.

Note 1.—The adjective and relative, referring to *persons* of different genders, are put in the masculine; when referring to *things* of different genders, are put in the neuter; as, *Pater et mater mortui sunt*, Father and mother are dead; *Divitiae, decus, et gloria sunt caduca*, Riches, honour, and glory, are fading.

Note 2.—A verb having two or more subjects of different persons, is put in the first person plural rather than in the second, and in the second rather than in the third; as, *Ego et tu et puer vidēmus*, You, I, and the boy, see; *Tu et puer vidētis*, You and the boy see.

Note 3.—The adjective and verb often agree with the nearest subject only, and are understood to the others; as, *Pax veniăque impetrāta est*, Peace and pardon were obtained.

6. A noun in apposition with another noun, or with a pronoun, agrees with it in case; as,—

Urbs Edinburgum, The city of Edinburgh.

Athenārum, Graecae urbis, Of Athens, a Greek city.

Vobis, tribūnis plebis, For you, the tribunes of the Commons.

7. A predicative noun or adjective, with substantive verbs and passive verbs of calling, agrees with the subject in case; as,—

Scio te esse discipŭlum, I know that you are a pupil.

Cicerōnis interest (Cicerōnem) esse prudentem, It is Cicero's interest to be prudent.

Tu vocāris Joannes, You are called John.

Note.—Such verbs are *sum, fio, evādo* (become), *appellor, creor*, &c.

II.—*Government of Nouns.*

1. One noun governs another signifying "the possessor," or "the object," in the genitive; as,—

Liber pŭĕri, The book belonging to the boy, or, The boy's book.

Amor patris, A father's love, or, Love for a father.

Note 1.—*Patris*, when translated in the former way, is called a *subjective* genitive, because the love *belongs to* or *resides in* the father—*i.e.*, the father is the *subject* of the love; when translated in the latter way, *patris* is called an *objective* genitive, because the love is *felt for* the father—*i.e.*, the father is the *object* of the love. The nouns that are accompanied by both these genitives are principally those derived from verbs; as *amor*, *invidia*, *desiderium*, *metus*, &c.

Note 2.—*Amor mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostri*, *vestri*, can only mean, Love for me, for you, &c. *Amor meus*, *tuus*, &c., usually means, The love that I, you, &c., have (for another).

Note 3.—The possessives, *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*, are always used instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns, to express *possession*; as, *Liber meus*, My book—never *Liber mei*.

2. One noun governs another noun accompanied by an adjective, together expressing its "characteristic," or "peculiarity," in the genitive or ablative; as,—

Vir summae prudentiae, or *summâ prudentiâ*, A man of the greatest prudence.

Puer novem annōrum, A boy nine years old.

Note.—The genitive of "characteristic" always consists of a noun and an adjective agreeing with it. The Latins never said, *vir fortitudinis*, but *vir fortis*, though we may say, "a man of gallantry." *Vir magnae fortitudinis* is good Latin for "a man of *great* gallantry."

3. *Opus* and *usus*, "need," govern the ablative; as,—

Opus est virtute, There is need of bravery.

Note.—*Opus* has sometimes another construction; *Libris opus est*, There is need of books, might also be *Libri opus sunt*, Books are a necessity, where *opus* agrees in case with *libri*. So also with an infinitive, as, *Opus est mihi discedĕre*, To depart is for me a necessity, I require to depart.

III.—*Government of Adjectives.*

1. The nominative and accusative singular neuter of some adjectives and pronouns, expressing quantity, govern the genitive; as,—

Habet multum pecuniae, He has much money.

Hoc solatii est, There is this (degree of) consolation.

Note 1.—Such adjectives and pronouns are, *multum, plus, plurimum, amplius, minus, minimum, nimium, parum, tantum, quantum, aliquantum, reliquum, aliud; hoc, id, illud, idem, quod* (relative), *quid*, and their compounds.

Note 2.—If such adjectives and pronouns are in any other case than the nominative or accusative, they must agree with the noun; as, *Multâ pecuniâ eget*, He needs much money.

2. Verbal adjectives govern the genitive of the object; as,—

Avĭdus gloriae, desirous of glory.

Patiens frigŏris, Patient of cold.

3. Partitives govern the genitive plural; as,—

Quis nostrum? Which of us?

Doctissimus Romanorum, The most learned of the Romans.

Una Musārum, One of the Muses.

Notes.—Collectives are put in the genitive singular; as, *Quis nostri ordinis?* Who of our order?

4. Adjectives of "advantage" or "disadvantage," "suitableness" or "unsuitableness," govern the dative; as,—

Perniciōsus reipublicae, Destructive to the commonwealth.

Ūtĭlis bello, Profitable for war.

Note.—Similis, like, and *dissimilis*, unlike, usually take the dative of *external* resemblance, and the genitive of resemblance *in character*.

5. An adjective in the comparative degree, if in the nominative or vocative, governs the ablative of comparison; as,—

Dulcior melle, Sweeter than honey.
Praestantior auro, Better than gold.

Note 1.—If the comparative is in the accusative, the following noun, especially if represented by a pronoun, may be in the ablative; as, *Servum hoc fideliorem nunquam habuisti*, You never had a more faithful slave than this.

Note 2.—If the comparative is in any other case than the nominative (accusative) or vocative, the comparison is expressed by *quam*; as, *Patri pepercit inimīco graviōri quam fuit filius*, He spared the father, a bitterer enemy than the son (was).

6. *Dignus*, *indignus*, *contentus*, *praeditus*, *captus*, *fretus*, and adjectives of "origin," govern the ablative; as,—

Dignus honōre, Worthy of honour.
Fretus virĭbus, Trusting to his strength.
Ortus regĭbus, Descended of kings.

7. Adjectives of "plenty" and "want" govern the ablative, and sometimes the genitive; as,—

Dives opĭbus, Rich in resources.
Inops rationis, Void of reason.

IV.—*Government of Verbs.*

1. *Sum* governs the genitive of "possession;" but, instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns, the possessives, *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, and *vester*, are employed; as,—

Hic liber est pŭĕri, This book belongs to the boy.
Militum est duci parēre, It belongs to, or It is the duty of, soldiers to obey the general.
Tuum est scribĕre, It belongs to you, or It is your duty, to write.
Hic liber est meus, This book belongs to me.

Note.—*Facio* and *fio* are used in the same way; as, *Thebas suae ditionis fecit*, He reduced Thebes under his own power. *Thebae Romanorum factae sunt*, Thebes fell under the power of the Romans.

2. *Miserĕor, misereseo,* and *satĭago* govern the genitive; as,—

Miserēre civium tuōrum, Take pity on your countrymen.

3. *Sum,* used for *habeo,* "have," governs the dative of a person; as,—

Est mihi liber, I have a book (*lit.*, A book is to me).
Sunt mihi libri, I have books (*lit.*, Books are to me).
Desunt mihi libri, I have no books (*lit.*, Books are wanting to me).

4. *Sum* used for *affĕro,* "bring," and some other verbs, govern two datives, the one of a person, the other of a thing; as,—

Est mihi voluptāti, It is, or brings, a pleasure to me.
Veniunt hostĭbus auxĭlio, They come to the assistance of the enemy.

Note.—The other verbs used in this way are *accipio, dŏlĭgo, do, habeo, mitto, relinquo, venio,* and sometimes *duco* and *tribŭo;* but this use of some of them is confined to particular phrases.

5. Verbs signifying "favour," "disfavour," "command," "obedience," "resistance," "anger," and "trust," govern the dative; as,—

Fortūna favet fortĭbus, Fortune favours the brave.
Nemĭni nocent, They hurt nobody.

Note.—But these common verbs *juvo* and *adjŭvo,* help; *laedo,* hurt; *jubeo,* order; and *veto,* forbid, govern the accusative.

6. Verbs compounded with *satis, bene,* and *male,* and the compounds of *sum,* govern the dative; as,—

Satisfēcit magistratui, He has satisfied the magistrate.
Prodĕrit civitati, He will benefit the state.

Note.—Many verbs also compounded with prepositions govern the dative; as *assideo,* sit beside, assist; *innītor,* lean upon; *obtrecto,* disparage; *succēdo,* succeed; *supervenio,* come upon (suddenly).

7. Transitive verbs generally govern the accusative; as,—

Ama Deum, Love God.

Reverēre parentes, Reverence your parents.

Note 1.—Intransitive verbs have sometimes an accusative of the cognate noun; as, *Vivĕre vitam*, To live a life; *Pugnare pugnam*, To fight a battle.

Note 2.—Passive verbs have sometimes an accusative of *limitation* after them; as *Ictus est femur*, He was struck in the thigh. This accusative is especially common in the case of certain general expressions, as *magnam* (*maximam*) *partem, summum, minimum, cetera, reliqua, nihil, hoc, id, illud, aliquid.*

8. *Recordor, memĭni, reminiscor, and obliviscor*, govern the genitive or accusative; as,—

Recordor lectiōnis, or *lectiōnem*, I remember my lesson.

Obliviscor injuriae, or *injuriam*, I forget an injury.

9. Verbs of "accusing," "condemning," and "acquitting," govern the accusative of the person and the genitive of the crime; as,—

Arguit me furti, He accuses me of theft.

Puĕrum inertiae condemno, I condemn the boy of laziness.

Illum homicidii absolvunt, They acquit him of manslaughter.

Note.—Verbs of "admonishing" have this construction except with general expressions, as *hoc, id, illud*, &c., when they govern two accusatives; as, *Monet me officii*, He warns me of my duty; but *Te hoc moneo*, I warn you of this.

10. Verbs of "comparing," "giving," "declaring," and "taking away," govern the accusative and dative; as,—

Compăro Virgilium Homēro, I compare Virgil to Homer.

Narras fabŭlam surdo, You tell a story to a deaf man.

Eripuit me morti, He rescued me from death.

Note.—Verbs of "comparing" have sometimes the ablative with *cum*.

11. Verbs of "freeing" and many verbs of "depriving" govern the accusative and ablative; as,—

Libĕrat me metu, He frees me from fear.

Spoliat hostem torque, He spoils the enemy of his collar.

Note 1.—Verbs of "freeing" frequently take the preposition *a* or *ab*, especially before a noun signifying a person.

Note 2.—Verbs of "depriving" with this construction are *fraudo, nudo, orbo, privo*, and *spolio*.

12. Verbs of "asking" and "teaching" admit of two accusatives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,—

Posce Deum veniam, Beg pardon of God.

Docuit me grammaticam, He taught me grammar.

Note 1.—*Celo*, conceal, has frequently this construction; as, *Iter omnes celat*, He conceals his journey from all.

Note 2.—*Oro, peto, postŭlo*, and *quaero*, have the accusative of the thing, and the person is put in the ablative with a preposition; as, *Peto hoc a te*, I ask you for this.

13. The Passives of those verbs which govern two cases may retain the second case; as,—

Accūsor furti, I am accused of theft.

Virgilius comparātur Homēro, Virgil is compared to Homer.

Doceor grammaticam, I am taught grammar.

14. Verbs of "plenty" and "want" govern the ablative; as,—

Caret omni culpa, He is free from every fault.

Note.—Egeo and *indigeo*, require, are sometimes found with a genitive.

15. *Utor, abūtor, fruor, fungor, potior*, and *vescor* govern the ablative; as,—

Utĭtur fraude, He uses deceit.

Vescĭtur carne, He feeds on flesh.

Note.—Potior sometimes governs a genitive; as, *Potīri totīus Galliae* (Caes.), To become master of all Gaul; always so in the expression, *Potīri rerum*, To get the chief rule.

16. An impersonal verb governs the dative; as,—

Licet nemĭni peccāre, No one is allowed to sin.
Parētur duci, The general is obeyed.

17. *Rĕfert* and *intĕrest* govern the genitive; but *meā*, *tuā*, *suā*, *nostrā*, and *vestrā*, are used instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns; as,—

Refert mei patris, It concerns my father.
Intĕrest meā, I am concerned.

18. These five, *misĕret*, *poenĭtet*, *pudet*, *taedet*, and *piget*, govern the accusative of a person with the genitive; as,—

Misĕret me tui, I pity you.
Poenĭtet me peccāti, I repent of my sin.

Note.—An infinitive may take the place of the genitive; as, *Poenitet me peccavisse*, I repent of having sinned.

19. These four, *decet*, *delectat*, *juvat*, and *oportet*, govern the accusative of a person with the infinitive; as,—

Delectat me studēre, I delight to study.
Non decet te rixāri, It does not become you to scold.

Note.—This infinitive is really the subject of the verb—*studēre delectat me*, studying delights me.

20. One verb governs another, as its object, in the infinitive; as,—

Cupio discĕre, I desire to learn.
Scio te ventūrum esse, I know you will come.

Note 1.—The *bare* infinitive, as object, follows verbs denoting *ability*, *beginning*, *desire*, *determination*, *hesitation*, &c., and expresses an action which is *confined to the subject* of the governing verb.

Note 2.—The acc. and inf., as object, follows verbs of *knowing*, *thinking*, and *saying (verba sentiendi et declarandi)*, and has usually for its sign in English the particle "that."

V.—*Gerunds.*

1. The nominative and accusative gerunds with *sum* govern the dative; as,—

Vivendum est mihi recte, I must live well (*lit.*, The-necessity-of-living well is for me).

Scio moriendum esse omnibus, I know that all must die (*lit.*, I know that the-necessity-of-dying is for all).

2. The genitive gerund is governed by nouns or adjectives; as,

Cupiditas certandi, The desire to-contend.

Cupĭdus discendi, Desirous to learn.

Note 1.—The nouns are such as, *ars, auctor, causa, celerĭtas, conātus, consilium, consuetūdo, copia, cupiditas, cura, difficultas, dux, experientia, facultas, finis, genus, gratia, initium, jus, laus, libīdo, locus, materia, modus, mora, mos, munus, necessĭtas, occasio, potestas, princeps, principium, ratio, scientia, spatium, species, spes, studium, tempus, usus, via, voluptas.*

Note 2.—The adjectives are such as, *avĭdus, conscius, cupĭdus, ignārus, insuētus, inemor, studiōsus.*

3. The dative gerund is governed by adjectives signifying "usefulness" or "fitness;" as,—

Charta utĭlis scribendo, Paper useful for writing.

Note 1.—These adjectives are such as, *aptus, idonĕus, par, utĭlis, inutilis.*

Note 2.—The dative is very common after *praeesse, praeficere, operam dare, diem dicere, locum capere*, and the names of officials, but the participle in *dus* is employed instead of the gerund, as *Triumvĭri coloniae deducendae*, A commission of three to plant a colony. This is commonly called the dative of *destination*, and is nearly equivalent to *ad* and the accusative.

4. The accusative gerund is governed by the prepositions *ad* and *inter* (in time of); as,—

Parātus ad audiendum, Ready to hear.

Attentus inter docendum, Attentive during teaching.

5. The ablative gerund is governed by the prepositions *a* or *ab*, *de*, *e* or *ex*, and *in*; or is used without a preposition, as the ablative of manner or cause; as,—

Poena a peccando absterret, Punishment frightens from sinning.

Defessus sum ambulando, I am weary with walking.

6. Gerunds governing the accusative are more elegantly turned into the participles in *dus*, which agree with the noun in gender, number, and case; as,—

(*Petendum est mihi pacem*), more elegantly, *Petenda est mihi pax.*	I must seek peace.
Tempus petendi pacem, more elegantly, *Tempus petendae pacis.*	Time of seeking peace.
Ūtilis petendo pacem, more elegantly, *Ūtilis petendae paci.*	Useful for seeking peace.
(*Ad petendum pacem*), more elegantly, *Ad petendam pacem.*	To seeking peace.
(*A petendo pacem*), more elegantly, *A petenda pace.*	From seeking peace.

Note.—The nominative and accusative gerunds, the dative gerund after the verbs or verbal phrases, *praeesse*, *operam dare*, &c., and after names of officials, and the ablative gerund preceded by a preposition, are very seldom used to govern an accusative, but are turned into the participle in *dus*.

VI.—*Supines.*

1. The first supine is put after a verb of "motion;" as,—

Abiit deambulātum, He has gone to walk.

Note.—This supine is properly the accusative of a verbal noun of the 4th decl., having only one other case, the ablative, which is called the second supine.

2. The second supine is put after certain adjectives; as,—
Facile dictu, Easy to tell *or* to be told.

Note 1.—Only a few supines in *u* are found, as *audītu, cognĭtu, factu, inceptu, inventu, memorātu, tactu, visu.*

Note 2.—The most common adjectives used in this way are *acerbus, dignus, indignus, dulcis, facilis, difficilis, fas, nefas, honestus, horribilis, jucundus, miserabĭlis, optĭmus, terribĭlis, turpis.*

VII.—*Place.*

1. "At" a town is expressed by the genitive; but if the name of the town is of the third declension, or of the plural number, it is expressed by the ablative; as,—
Vixit Romae, He lived at Rome.
Habĭtat Carthagĭne, He dwells at Carthage.
Studuit Parisĭis, He studied at Paris.

Note 1.—Besides names of towns, *bellum, humus*, and *militia* are construed in this way.

Note 2.—When "at" means "near" and not "in," the name of a town is put in the accusative with *ad* or (more rarely) *apud;* as, *Proelium insigne ad* or *apud Zamam factum est*, A famous battle was fought at (near) Zama.

Note 3.—Names of towns in *e*, of the first declension, have *ae*, and not *es*, in the genitive, to express "at"; as, *Vixit Prīenae*, He lived at Priene.

2. "To" a town is expressed by the accusative; as,—
Profectus est Athēnas, He went to Athens.

Note.—Profectus est Athēnas means that the object of his journey was to *enter* Athens; *Profectus est ad Athēnas*, that it was to reach only *the vicinity of* Athens.

3. "From," and "by" a town are expressed by the ablative; as,—
Discessit Aberdonia, He departed from Aberdeen.
Laodicĕa iter fecit, He journeyed by Laodicea.

Note.—This ablative is used in the case of other nouns besides names of towns; as, *His pontĭbus pabulatores mittit*, By *or* along these bridges he sends foragers. It is almost invariably used when *totus*, whole, is connected with the noun; as, *Caesar nuntios tota civitate dimittit*, Caesar sends messengers throughout the whole state.

4. *Domus* and *rus* are construed in the same way as names of towns; as,—

Manet domi, He stays at home.
Domum revertĭtur, He returns home.
Domo arcessītus sum, I have been called from home.
Vivit rure or *ruri*, He lives in the country.
Abiit rus, He has gone to the country.
Rediit rure, He has returned from the country.

Note 1.—*Domi* stands alone, or with the possessive pronouns; *in domo* is used in other instances; as, *Meae domi*, At my house, but *In consŭlis domo*, In the consul's house.

Note 2.—The form *rure* (abl. of *rus*) may mean either "*in*," or "*from*, the country." *Ruri* can mean only "*in* the country."

5. To other nouns, not names of towns, the preposition is generally added; as,—

Profectus erat ad urbem, He had gone to the city.
Redĭbit ex Italia, He will return from Italy.

VIII.—*Distance and Measure.*

1. "Distance" and "measure" are expressed by the accusative, "distance" also sometimes by the ablative; as,—

Castra distant triginta millia, or *millĭbus, passuum*, The camp is thirty miles distant.
Columna sexaginta pedes alta, A pillar sixty feet high.

2. The "measure of excess" is put in the ablative; as,—

Duōbus pedibus altior, Two feet higher (*lit.*, Higher by two feet).
Multo melius, Much better (*lit.*, Better by much).

Note.—This ablative is employed in the adverbial expressions, *multo*, (by) much, far; *paullo*, (by) a little; *aliquanto*, considerably; *nihilo*, (by) nothing; *quo—eo*, the—the; *quanto—tanto*, (by) how much—(by) so much.

IX.—*Time.*

1. Time "when?" is expressed by the ablative; as,—

Venit hora tertia, He came at the third hour.

Mortuus est tribus pòst diĕbus, He died three days after.

Note 1.—The last sentence might be as well, *Mortuus est post tres dies*, but *post* is then the *preposition* governing *dies* in the accusative.

Note 2.—The questions, "*when?*" and "*how long?*" are always asked with reference to the *verb;* as, Herodŏtus lived 400 years before Christ. The question is not, How long did Herodŏtus live? but, When did Herodŏtus live? *Herodŏtus vixit quadringentis annis* (abl.) *ante Christum. Herodŏtus vixit quadringentos annos* (acc.) *ante Christum*, would strictly mean, Herodŏtus lived for 400 years before Christ!

2. Time "how long?" is expressed by the accusative, and sometimes by the ablative; as,—

Mansit paucos dies, He staid a few days.

Sex mensĭbus abfuit, He was away six months.

X.—*The Absolute Case.*

A noun and a participle, whose case depends on no other word, are put in the ablative absolute; as,—

Sole oriente, fugiunt tenĕbrae, The sun rising, darkness flies away.

Opĕre peracto, ludēmus, Our work being finished, we will play.

Note.—Sometimes a noun may take the place of the participle; as, *Cicerōne consŭle*, In the consulship of Cicero; *Hannibăle duce*, Under the leadership of Hannibal.

XI.—*Price.*

"Price" is expressed by the ablative; but these genitives, *magni, parvi, tanti, quanti, pluris, minōris, nihĭli*, &c., are excepted; as,—

XV.—*Conjunctions.*

1. The conjunctions, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, &c., couple like cases; as,—

Honōra patrem et matrem, Honour your father and mother.

XVI.—*Interjections.*

1. Interjections govern the vocative in *direct*, and the accusative in *indirect* address; as,—

O mi amīce! O my friend!
O stultum puĕrum! O the foolish boy!
Heu me misĕrum! Ah wretch that I am!

2. *Hei* and *vae* govern the dative; as,—

Hei mihi! Ah me!
Vae vobis! Woe to you!

CHAPTER II.—CLAUSE-CONSTRUCTION.

I.—Use of SUI and SUUS.

SUI, of him(self), her(self), it(self), them(selves) and SUUS, his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own), are used,—

1. When they refer to the subject of the verb or participle in their clause; as,

Puer sibi *nocuit*, The boy has injured himself.
Puer ei *nocuit* would mean, The boy has injured him (some other person).

Joannes libros suos *legebat*, John was reading his (John's) books.
Joannes libros ejus *legebat* would mean, John was reading his (some other person's) books. For example, *Jacobus ludebat, sed Joannes libros* ejus *legebat*, James was playing, but John was reading his (James's) books.

Jacobus vidit puerum qui libros suos *amiserat*, James saw the boy who had lost his (the boy's) books.
In this sentence, *suos* refers to *qui*, the subject of *amiserat*, the verb in the clause,—*qui libros* ejus *amiserat* would mean, who had lost his (James's) books.

Vidi Joannem cum fratre suo *ludentem*, I saw John playing with his (John's) brother.

Here *suo* can refer only to *Joannem*, the subject of the participle, *ludentem*, in the clause. But *Pueri viderunt Joannem cum fratre* suo *ludentem* is ambiguous, because *suo* may refer either to *Pueri*, the subject of *viderunt*, or to *Joannem*, the subject of *ludentem*. The context alone can determine whether the meaning is, The boys saw John playing with *their* (the boys') brother, or with *his* (John's) brother. If *ejus* were used instead of *suo*, the brother would neither be the boys' nor John's, but some other person's brother.

2. When they are in an "acc. and inf." clause, or a clause of "purpose," and refer to the subject of the *principal* clause; as,—

Imperator vidit hostes dextrum suum *cornu profligasse*, The general saw that the enemy had routed his (the general's) right wing.

If the sense allowed, *suum* might refer to *hostes*, the subject of *profligasse*, the verb in the clause.

Miles fortiter pugnavit, ut sese *in priorem gradum imperator restitueret* (purpose clause). The soldier fought bravely, that the general might restore him to his former rank.

But *Miles ita pugnavit, ut* eum *in priorem gradum imperator restituere nollet* (clause of consequence), The soldier fought in such a manner, that the general would not restore him to his former rank. If *se* were used here instead of *eum*, it could only refer to *imperator*, the subject of the verb *in the clause*.

Consul poposcit navem quae (= *ut ea*) se *prosequeretur* (purpose clause). The consul demanded a ship to accompany him.

But *Consul adeptus est navem, quae* eum *prosecuta est*, The consul obtained a ship, which accompanied him. If *se* were used instead of *eum*, it could only refer to *quae* (= *navis*), the subject of the verb *in the clause*.

3. When they are in a clause of "indirect narration," and refer to the person, or persons, whose sentiments are given; as,—

Ariovistus respondit, si quid Caesar a se *vellet, illum ad* se *venire oportere*, Ariovistus replied, that, if Caesar wanted anything from him (Ariovistus), he (Caesar) ought to come to him (Ariovistus).

If the sense permitted, *se* might, in both cases, refer as well to *Caesar*, the subject of the verbs in the clauses. *Ab eo*, instead of *a se*, would mean, neither from Ariovistus, the person whose sentiments are given, nor from Caesar, the subject of *vellet*, but from some third person, mentioned before.

Caesar amicos suos accusat, quod se *non adjuverint*, Caesar accuses his friends of not having assisted him (Caesar).

The meaning might be, if the sense allowed, Caesar accuses his friends of not having assisted themselves.

Note 1.—*Sui* and *suus* are sometimes employed, when they do not refer to the *grammatical* subject of the verb in the

clause, or of the principal verb, but to the *virtual* subject; as,—

Multa sunt civibus inter se *communia* = *Cives habent multa inter se communia*, Citizens have many things common among themselves (to each other).

A Caesare invitor ut sibi *sim legatus* = *Caesar invitat me ut sibi sim legatus*. I am invited by Caesar to become his lieutenant.

Faustŭlo spes fuerat regiam stirpem apud se *educari* = *Faustulus speraverat*, &c., Faustulus had hoped that the royal offspring was being brought up at his house.

Note 2.—*Suus* is not expressed when the reference is clear; but, when in such a case it is expressed, it is emphatic, and generally precedes the noun with which it agrees; as,—

Filius cum patre relinquitur, The son is left with his father. *Nero propter crudelitatem odio habebatur*, Nero was hated for his cruelty. *Propter* suam *crudelitatem* would mean,—on account of his peculiar cruelty.

Note 3.—In some cases the emphatic *suus* is employed to refer to the *object* of the verb in the clause; as,—

Hannibalem sui *cives e civitate ejecerunt*, His own citizens cast Hannibal out of the state. Suam *occasionem hosti damus*, We are giving the enemy their own opportunity—the opportunity they so much desire.

II.—Double Negative.

1. As in English, so usually in Latin, two negatives coming together make an affirmative; as,—

Nemo non hoc facit, (There is) nobody (that) does not do this, Everybody does this.

Non nemo hoc facit, Not nobody does this, Somebody does this.

2. This is not the case, however, in Latin,—

(*a*). When a general negation is first stated, and then the particulars are given separately; as,—

Noluerunt successum neque Patribus neque consulibus. They did not wish success (*general negation*) *either* to the senators (*first particular*), *or* to the consuls (*second particular*).

(*b*). When a general negation is first stated, and then one prominent particular is introduced by *ne—quidem*; as,—

Noluerunt successum ne mihi quidem, They did not wish success (*general negation*) *even* to me (*prom. part.*).

III.—Sequence of Tenses.

The Tenses of verbs in all Moods are either Presential or Preteritive.

The Presential tenses are the *Present*, the *Present-Perfect* (with sign *have*, in English), and the *Future*.

The Preteritive tenses are the *Imperfect*, the *Past-Perfect*, and the *Pluperfect*.

The Tenses in the principal clauses regulate the Tenses in the dependent clauses.

The following are the most important Rules :—

1. When the verb in the principal clause is in a Presential tense, the dependent verb, if it expresses an event *of the same time*, is in the *present* tense; if it expresses an event *past at the time*, is in the *perfect* tense; as,—

Cupio discere (pres.), I desire (*now*) to learn (*at the time of my desiring*).
Veni (pres. perf.) *ut discam*, I have come to learn.
Dico te amavisse (perf.), I say that you loved (*previous to my saying*).
Scio quis venerit, I know who came (*previous to my knowing*).

2. When the verb in the principal clause is in a Preteritive tense, the dependent verb, if it expresses an event *of the same time*, is in the *imperfect* tense; if it expresses an event *past at the time*, is in the *pluperfect* tense; as,—

Cupiebam discere (impf.), I was desiring to learn (*at the time of my desiring*). *Veni* (past. perf.) *ut discerem*, I came to learn (*at the time of my coming*).
Dixi (past perf.) *te amavisse* (plup.), I said that you loved (*previous to my saying*).
Sciebam quis amavisset, I knew who loved (*previous to my knowing*).

Note.—These two rules are well illustrated by sentences with *quasi*, "as if"—*Loquitur quasi dominus sit*, He speaks as if he were master (*at the time of his speaking*). *Loquitur quasi dominus fuerit*, He speaks as if he had been master (*previous to his speaking*). *Locutus est quasi dominus esset*, He spoke as if he had been master (*at the time of his speaking*). *Locutus est quasi dominus fuisset*, He spoke as if he had been master (*previous to his speaking*).

3. When a dependent clause has another clause dependent on it, the tense of the verb in the former regulates the tense of the verb in the latter; as,—

Scio te interrogasse quis veniret, I know that you asked who came (*at the time of your asking*). *Interrogo quis dixerit te venisse*, I ask who said that you came (*previous to the saying*).

Futures in Dependent Clause.

1.—*Presentials in Principal Clause.*

Dico, *I say;* Dixi, *I have said;* Dicam, *I shall say;* Dic, *say;* &c.—

Active.

te docturum esse *or* fore ut doceas, *that you will teach.*
te docturum fuisse *or* futurum fuisse ut doceres, *that you would have taught.*
ubi docturus sis *or* ubi futurum sit ut doceas, *where you will teach.*
ubi docturus fueris *or* ubi futurum fuerit ut doceres, *where you would have taught.*

Passive.

te doctum iri *or* fore ut docearis, *that you will be taught.*
futurum fuisse ut docereris, *that you would have been taught.*
ubi futurum sit ut docearis, *where you will be taught.*
ubi futurum fuerit ut docereris, *where you would have been taught.*

2.—*Preteritives in Principal Clause.*

Dicebam, *I was saying;* Dixi, *I said;* Dixeram, *I had said;* Dixissem, *I should have said;* &c.—

Active.

te docturum esse *or* fore ut doceres, *that you would teach.*
te docturum fuisse *or* futurum fuisse ut doceres, *that you would have taught.*
ubi docturus esses *or* ubi futurum esset ut doceres, *where you would teach.*
ubi docturus fueris *or* ubi futurum fuerit ut doceres, *where you would have taught.*

Passive.

te doctum iri *or* fore ut docereris, *that you would be taught.*
futurum fuisse ut docereris, *that you would have been taught.*
ubi futurum esset ut docereris, *where you would be taught.*
ubi futurum fuerit ut docereris, *where you would have been taught.*

IV.—Indirect Narration.

When a writer wishes to give the sentiments, whether the actual *sayings* or merely the *thoughts* of another person, he may do so in either of two ways. He may either represent the person as expressing them in his own words, as if in the hearing of the reader; or he may, as it were, keep him at a distance from the reader, and give his sentiments in a reported form. The first mode of narration is called *direct*, the second *indirect*.

Thus, in English,

Direct.—The king said to his soldiers, "*The barbarians against whom I am this day leading you, have long resisted my authority. Fight bravely, and I am confident you will be victorious.*"

Indirect.—The king said to his soldiers *that the barbarians, against whom he was that day leading them, had long resisted his authority. Let them fight bravely, and he was confident they would be victorious.*

It will be observed that, in English, the following changes take place in passing from the *direct* into the *indirect* form:

1. The pronouns of the *first* and *second* persons become pronouns of the *third* person.
2. *Presential* tenses become *preteritive* tenses.
3. Expressions properly attaching to presentials become such as properly attach to preteritives.

The same changes take place in Latin. But, besides these, there are others of a peculiar nature.

1. Indicatives in *principal* clauses become *infinitives*.
2. Indicatives in *subordinate* clauses become *subjunctives*.
3. *Imperatives* become *subjunctives*.
4. The pronouns, *ego*, *nos*, *meus*, *noster*, referring to the person, or persons, whose sentiments are given, become *sui* (*ipse*, *ipsi*, for nominatives) and *suus*.

Direct.—Rex militibus suis "*Barbari,*" inquit, "*contra quos vos hodie duco, imperio meo diu restiterunt. Fortiter pugnate, et habeo persuasum vos fore victores.*"

Indirect.—Rex militibus suis dixit *barbaros, contra quos eos illo*

die duceret, imperio suo diu restitisse. Fortiter pugnarent, et se habere persuasum eos fore victores.

Note 1.—If an indicative is employed in indirect narration, the clause to which it belongs expresses a sentiment of the *writer's*. Rex militibus suis dixit *barbaros*, contra quos eos illo die ducebat, *imperio suo diu restitisse*, would mean, The king said to his soldiers, that the barbarians, against whom (the *writer* says) he was leading them, &c.; whereas the subjunctive, *duceret*, means, against whom (the *king* said) he was leading them, &c. Galli dixerunt *se. quod male tractati essent, Romanos ulturos esse.* Here the subjunctive is employed in the clause introduced by *quod*, because *the Gauls give their ill treatment as the reason* for their taking vengeance; *quod male tractati erant* would be a *reason given by the writer for the Gauls saying* that they would take vengeance. Livius dicit *consulem*, quem magnopere laudat, *complures libros scripsisse.* Here the relative clause expresses a sentiment of the writer's, and not of Livy's, and therefore has the verb in the indicative.

Note 2.—Sometimes indirect narration is confined to a single clause, Aristides ob eam causam expulsus est patria, *quod praeter modum justus esset.* The subjunctive, *esset*, indicates that the writer is expressing the sentiments of others—"because *(people said)* he was too just." If the indicative, *erat*, had been employed instead, the clause would have contained the reason *assigned by the writer* for the banishment of Aristides.

V.—INTERROGATIVES.

1. Interrogatives take the INDICATIVE in *direct* questions; as,—

Quis ibit? Who will go? *Quando venisti?* When did you come? *Utrum pugnavit an fugit?* Whether did he fight or flee?

2. Interrogatives take the SUBJUNCTIVE in *indirect* questions; as,—

Scire velim quis iturus sit, I should like to know who will go.
Quando veneris non notum est, When you came is not known.
Nescio utrum pugnaverit an fugerit, I know not whether he fought or fled.

Note.—When the interrogative clause is either the subject or the object of a verb, the question is *indirect*, and the interrogative is said to be put *indefinitely*.

VI.—UTINAM.

UTINAM, "would that," takes the SUBJUNCTIVE,—

1. The *present* tense, when it is implied that the wish may be realised; as,—

Utinam adsit, Would that he were here (which he *may be*).

2. The *imperfect* tense, when it is implied that the wish cannot be realised, or that the thing wished for *is* not the fact; as,—

Utinam adesset, Would that he were here (which he *is not*).

3. The *pluperfect* tense, when it is implied that the thing wished for *was* not the fact; as,—

Utinam adfuisset, Would that he had been here (which he *was not*).

Note.—The negative of *utinam* is usually *utinam ne*.

VII.—NE (in prohibitions).

NE, "not," used instead of *non* in prohibitions, takes—

1. The IMPERATIVE, only in prohibitions strictly legal; as,—

Impius ne intrato, An impious man *shall* not enter.

2. In ordinary cases, the present SUBJUNCTIVE for the third person, and the perfect subjunctive for the second; as,—

Ne redeat, Let him not return. *Ibērum ne transieris*, Cross not the Ebro.

VIII.—QUAM.

1.—*Connecting Nouns.*

When *quam*, "than," is employed after a comparative,

1. The second of the two nouns compared together is put in the same case as the first, without a verb of its own,—

(*a*). When both nouns are subjects of the same verb in the same mood; as,—

Invenīmus viros audaciores esse quam feminas (*esse*), We find that men are bolder than (we find that) women (are).

Dedit ille mihi equum meliorem quam tu (*dedisti*), He gave me a better horse than you (gave me).

(*b*). When both nouns are governed by the same word; as,—

Equum meliorem mihi quam tibi dedit, He gave me a better horse than (he gave) you.

2. The second noun must have a verb of its own,—

(*a*). When the two nouns are subjects of the same verb, but the mood (or tense) is different; as,—

Dicit sororem suam pulchriorem esse quam fuerit Cleopatra, He says his sister is fairer than Cleopatra (was).

(*b*). When the second noun is not under the same government as the first; as,—

Roma nullum genuit postea majorem quam fuit, or *est, Miltonus*, Rome produced no poet greater than Milton (was *or* is).

Roma . . . . . quam Miltonum, would imply that *Roma* produced Milton.

Hæc sunt verba Socratis, philosophi majoris quam fuit Cicero, These are the words of Socrates, a greater philosopher than Cicero (was).

Omnium interest prudentiores esse quam est frater tuus, It is the interest of all to be more prudent than your brother (is).

Note.—The second noun may be put in the ablative without *quam* (1) If it is the subject of the same verb as the first; (2) If the first noun is in the vocative, and sometimes, if it is in the accusative, as object.

2. *Connecting Adjectives or Adverbs.*

When *quam*, "than," connects two adjectives or adverbs, the second adjective or adverb is also in the comparative; as,—

Area est latior quam longior, The chest is broader than long.

Stultior quam improbior est, He is more fool than knave.

Audacius quam prudentius egimus, We have acted more boldly than prudently.

If *magis*, more, is employed with the first adjective or adverb, it is not repeated with the second; as,—

Hic orator magis grandiloquus quam inclytus fuit, This orator was more grandiloquent than famous.

3.—*Connecting Verbs.*

Potius quam, "rather than," and *citius quam*, "sooner than," connecting verbs, are followed by the subjunctive, with or without *ut*, to express the taking of one alternative, *in order to avoid* the other; as,—

Potius mortuus est quam (ut) *serviret*, He died rather than be a slave, He died in order to avoid being a slave. *Dixit se potius morituram quam* (ut) *serviret*, He said he would die rather than be a slave.

Dixit se potius morituram quam servituram esse would express *a simple preference* for the first alternative. *Potius quam* (*ut*) is nearly equivalent to *ne*.

IX.—The Relative Qui.

1. Qui takes the Indicative,

(*a*). When it simply defines the antecedent, or when it has an *additive* force, "who," "which," "and I, thou, he, &c.;" as,—

Miles, qui interfectus est, centurio fuit, The soldier, who was killed, was a centurion.

(*b*). When it has an *adversative* force, "but I, thou, he, &c.;" as,—

Pater filios arcessivit, quorum (sed eorum) *nemo venit*, The father sent for his sons, but none of them came.

(*c*). When it has a *confirmative* force, "for I, thou, he, &c.;" as,—

Assentatio procul amoveatur, quae (nam ea) *amicis indigna est*, Let flattery be put far away, for it is unworthy of friends.

2. QUI takes the SUBJUNCTIVE,

(*a*). When it expresses *purpose*, "(in order) that I, thou, he, &c.;" as,—

Missi sunt qui (ut ii) *centurionem interficerent*, People were sent to kill the centurion.

Note.—This use of *qui* is the regular one after the adjectives, *dignus*, *indignus*, *idoneus*, and *aptus*; as, *Indignus est qui audiatur*, He is unworthy to be heard.

(*b*). When it expresses *consequence*, "such, of such a kind, or character, that I, thou, he, &c.;" as,—

Non is sum qui hoc faciam, I am not the man to do this.

Haec est sententia quam (talis ut eam) *nemo probet*, This is a sentiment that no one approves of.

Potentior est quam cui (ut ei) *resisti possit*, He is too powerful to be resisted.

Note.—This last case may be otherwise expressed thus—*Qui* takes the subjunctive when it is in the clause of the predicate, and the antecedent is indefinite, negative, or interrogative; as,—

Sunt qui haec dixerint, There are people that have said this. Here the predicate is not, people *are*, but people *have said this*, and the relative is in this clause. *Sunt qui haec dixerunt* would mean, The people who said this are (in existence). *Adsunt qui mortem servituti anteponant*. There are (some) here who prefer death to slavery. *Adsunt qui . . . . anteponunt* would mean, The persons, who prefer death to slavery, are here.

Nemo est qui haec dixerit, There is no one that has said this. *Nemo est qui haec dixit* would mean, The person that has said this is a nobody.

Quis est qui haec dixerit? Who is there that has said this? Has any one said this? *Quis est . . . dixit* would mean, Which is the person that said this?

(*c*). In clauses in "indirect narration."

X.—CUM or QUUM.

1. CUM or QUUM takes the INDICATIVE,

(*a*). When it introduces an event which *simply* indicates *the time* of the event in the principal clause, "at the time that," "when;" as,—

Puer duodecim annorum fuit cum (quo tempore) *mortuus est*, The boy was twelve years old when he died.

Note.—The indicative after *cum* temporal is especially common when the event in the principal clause either was going on (imperfect), or had just been completed (pluperfect), at the time of the event in the *cum* clause; as, *Vivebam Athenis cum capta est*

Corinthus, I was living at Athens when Corinth was taken. *Haec vix dixerat cum omnes discesserunt*, Scarcely had he said this when all went away. *Quum primum*, as soon as, is regularly followed by the indicative.

(*b*). When it means "as often as," "whenever," "if at any time;" as,—

Cum (si quando) *rosam video, tunc aestatem incipere arbitror*, When(ever) I see a rose, then I consider summer begins.

2. CUM or QUUM takes the SUBJUNCTIVE,

When it introduces the *circumstances* (cause, origin, occasion, &c.) under which the event in the principal clause takes place, "since," "seeing that," "as," "when," "while," "after;" as,—

Quum res ita sint, manebo, When (as, since) things are so, I shall stay. *Zenonem, quum Athenis essem, audiebam*, When (while) I was at Athens, or being at Athens, I heard Zeno.

In the last sentence, the subjunctive, *essem*, indicates that there is something more than a *mere connection in time* between my being at Athens and my hearing Zeno.

Quum sol occidisset, urbs oppugnata est, When the sun set, the city was attacked.

The subjunctive, *occidisset*, indicates that the setting of the sun was necessary or advantageous for the attack. *Quum sol occidit*, &c., indicates that the two events were contemporaneous, *without any further connection*.

XI.—UT, UT NON, NE, and NEVE.

1. UT takes the INDICATIVE,

(*a*). When it is *temporal*, "as soon as," "when;" as,—

Ut nuncii Romam pervenerunt magnum gaudium fuit, When the messengers reached Rome, great was the joy.

This use of *ut* is very common in the expressions, *statim ut* and *ut primum*.

(*b*). When it expresses *comparison*, "in the manner that," "as;" as,—

Perge ut instituisti, Go on as you have begun.

2. UT takes the SUBJUNCTIVE,

(*a*). When it is *concessive*, "granting that," "though;" as,—

Ut ita fecerim, non in culpa sum, Though (allowing that) I have done so, I am not to blame.

(*b*). When it expresses *consequence*, "(so) that," "as to," especially after the intensives, *adeo*, *ita*, *tam*, *talis*, *tantus*, *is* (such), &c.; as,—

Tam stultus est ut ei pareat, He is such a fool that he obeys him—as to obey him.

UT NON is the negative of *ut* of "consequence;" as,—

Tam stultus est ut ei non pareat, He is such a fool as not to obey him.

(*c*). When it expresses *purpose* or *aim*, "(in order) that," "with a view to," "to;" as,—

Veni ut discam, I have come, in order that I may learn—to learn.

Mihi suasit ut abirem, He advised me, in order that I might go away—to go away.

NE is the negative of *ut* of "purpose;" as,—

Ne caperer, abii, (In order) not to be caught, or Lest I should be caught, I went away.

Mihi suasit ne abirem, He advised me not to go away.

NEVE or NEU is used for *et ne;* as,—

Maelius oravit ut opem sibi ferrent, neve (et ne) *trucidari sinerent*, Maelius entreated them to lend him aid, and not allow him to be murdered.

(*d*). When it has an *optative* force after verbs of fearing, "that not;" as,—

Timeo ut veniat, I fear he will not come—*lit.*, I fear in regard to my wish that he may come. May he come, but I fear (he will *not*).

The opposite is expressed by *ne;* as,—

Timeo ne veniat, I am afraid he will come—*lit.*, I fear in regard to my wish that he may not come. May he not come, but I fear (he *will*).

XII.—QUOD, QUIA, and QUONIAM.

1. QUOD, QUIA, and QUONIAM (*quum jam*), "because," "since," "as," are regularly followed by the *indicative;* as,—

Proficisci nolebant, quia consul vetabat, They would not set out, because the consul forbade.

2. QUOD takes the SUBJUNCTIVE,

(*a*). When it has a *limiting* force, "as far as;" as,—

Nemo, quod sciam, urbe excessit, No one, as far as I know, has left the city.

(*b*). When preceded by a negative, to express a *false* or an *alleged* reason; as,—

Torquati filius necatus est, non quod Mettium interfecisset, sed quia patri suo non paruerat, The son of Torquatus was put to death, not because he had slain Mettius, but because he had not obeyed his father.

XIII.—SI, NISI, SIVE, QUASI, and DUMMODO.

SI, "if," and NISI, "if not," "unless," take,

1. The INDICATIVE, when a simple supposition is made, and no doubt or uncertainty is expressed; as,—

Si Deus creavit mundum, etiam conservat, If (on the supposition that) God created the world, (then, as a consequence) he also preserves it.

Si vera est fama, de me actum est, If the report is true (as you say it is), it is all over with me.

Nisi inveneris equum, nullum accipies praemium, Supposing you shall not have found the horse, you shall receive no reward. Unless you find the horse, &c.

2. The SUBJUNCTIVE,

(*a*). When doubt or uncertainty is implied; as,—

Librum si habeam, mittam, If (should) I have the book (but I am not sure whether I have it or not), I will send it.

(*b*). When the opposite of the supposition is or was the fact; as,—

Imperfect tense—Librum si haberem, mitterem, If I had the book (but I *have* it *not*), I would send it.

Librum nisi haberem, ferre non possem, Unless I had the book (but I *have* it), I could not bring it.

Pluperfect tense—Si tu adfuisses, frater meus non mortuus esset, Had *you* been here (but you *were not*), my brother would not have died.

Nisi tu adfuisses, frater meus mortuus esset, Had *you* not been here (but you *were*), my brother would have died.

SIVE—SIVE, or (SEU—SEU), "either on the supposition that—or that, "whether—or," take the indicative; as,—

Sive adest, sive abiit, de me actum est, Either on the supposition that he is here, or on the supposition that he is gone, it is all over with me. Whether he is here, or whether he is gone, it is, &c.

Note—But *Utrum adsit, an abierit nescio*, I know not whether he is here or is gone. In this sentence, the clauses, *Utrum adsit* and *an abierit* are the objects of *nescio*, and therefore not *sive—sive*, but the interrogatives *utrum—an* are employed. (See c. II § V. 2).

QUASI, "as if," introduces a supposition, which, it is implied, is, or was, the opposite of the fact, and the following mood is always the subjunctive. (For examples see p. 109 Note).

DUMMODO, DUM, and MODO, "provided that," take the subjunctive; as,—

Dummodo patri pareas, nihil recuso, Provided that you obey your father, I have no objection.

Oderint dum metuant, Let them hate, provided that they fear.

The negative of *dummodo*, &c., is *dummodo ne*, &c.

XIV.—ETSI, QUANQUAM, QUAMVIS, and LICET.

ETSI, "even if," "although," and QUANQUAM, "albeit," "although," are regularly joined to the INDICATIVE.

LICET, "it is allowable," "although," and QUAMVIS, "to what degree you please," "although," are regularly joined to the SUBJUNCTIVE.

XV.—QUO, QUOMINUS, and QUIN.

QUO (= *ut eo*), "(in order) that thereby," "that," expressing purpose, is used instead of *ut* principally before comparatives, and takes the SUBJUNCTIVE; as,—

Dux praemia suis proposuit, quo fortiores essent, The general held out rewards to his men, that (by that means) they might be braver.

QUOMINUS (= *quo minus*) "that the less," "that not," equivalent to *ne*, is specially used after verbs of *hindering* and *refusing*, and takes the SUBJUNCTIVE; as,—

Non prohibebat quominus abirent, He did not hinder them, *that* they might *not* go away,—from going away.

Per te stetit quominus abirent, It was owing to you *that* they did *not* go away.

QUIN (fr. *quî*, "how," old abl. of *quis* or *qui*, and *ne* = *non*), "how not" takes—

1. The INDICATIVE, when it is interrogative; as,—

Quin ad urbem properamus? How (why) do we not hasten to the city?

2. The SUBJUNCTIVE, when it is relative, and equivalent to *ita ut non*, *talis ut non*, "how that not," "so that not," "but that," "without," and it is never used except after clauses that are formally or virtually negative; as,—

Nunquam, *Vix unquam*, *Quis unquam*, *venit*, *quin* (ita ut non) *te videat*, He never, He scarcely ever, Who ever (= nobody ever), comes *so that* he sees you *not*,—without seeing you.

Nemo est quin (talis ut non) *hoc viderit*, There is no one such that he has not seen this, There is no one but has seen this.

Non dubitamus quin fuerint ante Homerum poetae, We doubt not but that there were poets before Homer.

XVI.—UBI, SIMULAC, and QUUM PRIMUM.

UBI, "when," SIMULAC, or SIMULATQUE before a vowel, "as soon as," and QUUM PRIMUM, "as soon as," take the INDICATIVE, and usually the perfect tense.

XVII.—ANTEQUAM, PRIUSQUAM, and POSTQUAM.

ANTEQUAM, "before," and PRIUSQUAM, "before," take,

1. The INDICATIVE, when they denote *mere priority of occurrence*; as,—

Consul ante, or *prius*, *abiit*, *quam dimissus est senatus*, The consul went away before the senate was dismissed.

2. The SUBJUNCTIVE,

(*a*). When they introduce a *design*; as,—

Caesar, *priusquam quidquam conaretur*, *Divitiacum arcessivit*, Caesar, before he should attempt anything, sent for Divitiacus. Caesar, before attempting, &c.

(*b*). When they introduce *a result;* as,—

Tempestas minatur antequam surgat, A tempest threatens before it can rise—before it rises.

(*c*). When they introduce something that *never occurred;* as,—

Naves prius sunt demersae quam ad oram pervenirent, The ships were sunk before they (could reach) reached the shore.

POSTQUAM, "after," takes the INDICATIVE, and usually the *perfect* tense, except when preceded by a *definite* space of time, when it may have the *pluperfect* tense; as,—

Consul brevi post rediit quam urbs capta est, The consul returned shortly after the city had been taken.

Consul tribus post diebus rediit quam urbs capta erat, The consul returned three days after the city had been taken.

XVIII.—DONEC, QUOAD, and DUM.

DONEC, "as long as," "until," QUOAD, "until," and DUM, "while," "until," take,

1. The INDICATIVE, to denote *simple continuance in time;* as,—

Institutum mansit, donec Pinarium genus fuit, The institution continued as long as the Pinarian race existed.

Potitii antistites fuerunt, donec omne genus interiit, The Potitii were the presiding priests until the whole race died out.

Milo in senatu fuit quoad senatus dimissus est, Milo continued in the senate till it was dismissed.

Haec dum Romae geruntur, tristis nuntius allatus est, While this was going on at Rome, sad intelligence was brought.

Exspectavit dum omnes exierunt, He waited till all went out.

2. The SUBJUNCTIVE,

(*a*). To introduce a *purpose* or *aim;* as,—

Opperiebantur quoad scire possent, They waited till they should be able to know—till they could know.

(*b*). To introduce a *necessary preliminary;* as,—

Loqui nolebant donec Marcellus rediisset, They would not speak till Marcellus should have returned—till Marcellus returned.

Exspectate dum consul aut dictator Kaeso fiat, Wait till Kaeso is appointed consul or dictator.

PART III.

PROSODY.

Prosody treats of the quantity of syllables and the measures of verse.

CHAPTER I.—QUANTITY.

A syllable as to quantity, is either *long*, as *pā* in *pānis*; *short*, as *pă* in *păter*; or *common*, as *pă̄* in *pătris*.

General Rules.

1. A contracted syllable is long; as *mōbilis*, contr. from *movibilis*; *cōgo*, contr. from *coago*.

2. A diphthong, or a single vowel taking the place of a diphthong, is long, as *laedo*, *allūdo*; *audio*, *obēdio*; *claudo*, *exclūdo*.

Exc.—*Præ*, in composition, before a vowel, may be short, as *præeo*.

3. A vowel before two consonants, the letter *j*, or the double letters *x* and *z*, is long; as *ābscōndo*, *cūjus*, *rīxa*, *gāza*.

Exc.—1. A vowel short by nature, coming before a mute followed by a liquid (*l*, *m*, *n*, *r*) in the same syllable, is rendered common; as *pătris*.

The vowel *a* is here short by nature, as is seen in the nom. *păter*, and it comes before a mute *t*, followed by a liquid *r*, in the same syllable. *Matris* has *a* always long, because, though it comes before a mute *t*, followed by a liquid *r*, in the same syllable, it is *long by nature*, as is seen in the nom. *māter*. *Quamobrem* has *o* always long, because, though it is short by nature (*ŏb*), the mute *b* and the liquid *r* which follow it, are *in different syllables*—*quam ob·rem*.

2. The vowel before *j* is short in the compounds of *jugum*; as *bĭjugae.*

4. A vowel before another vowel, and before *h*, is short; as *mĕus, docĕo, trăho.*

Exc.—1. *ei* in the fifth declension has *e* long if *i* precedes, *e* doubtful if a consonant precedes, as *diēi, fidĕi* or *fidēi.*

2. *Fio* has *i* long, unless *-er* follows, as *fīam*, but *fĭerem.*

3. Genitives in *ius* have *i* doubtful, as *unīus* or *unĭus*; but *alīus*, the genitive of *alĭus*, has it long.

5. *Ēheu, āer, dīus, Cāius, Pompēius, Orīon*, have the first vowel long; *ohe, academia, Diana*, have it doubtful.

4. Many Greek words in *ia* or *ea*, especially names of towns, have the penult long, as *elegīa, Alexandrīa, Antiochīa, Caesarēa.*

5. Derivatives retain the quantity of their primitives; as, *ămicus* from *ămo*; *ămīcitia* from *ămīcus*; *inĭmīcĭtiae* from *ămīcĭtia.*

Exc.—1. Some derivatives are long, though their primitives are short; as,—

dēni	*fr.* dĕcem.		lex, lēgis	*fr.*	lĕgo.		sōcius	*fr.* sŏcus.
hūmanus	,, hŭmus.		rex, rēgis	,,	rĕgo.		sēdes	,, sĕdeo.
hūmor	,, hŭmus.		nōnus	,,	nŏvem.		tēgula	,, tĕgo.
jūgerum	,, jŭgum.		rēgula	,,	rĕgo.		vox, vōcis	,, vŏco.

Many apparent exceptions arise from contraction; as,—

fōmes = fovimes *fr.* fŏveo.
jūcundus = juvicundus *fr.* jŭvat
jūnior = juvenior *fr.* jŭvenis.
mōbilis = movibilis *fr.* mŏveo.
sublīmis = sublevimis *fr.* sublĕvo.
suspicio = suspicitio *fr.* suspĭcio (v).

2. Some derivatives are short, though their primitives are long; as,—

dĭcax	*fr.* dīco.		lŭcerna	*fr.*	lūceo.		sŏpor	*fr.* sōpio.
dux, dŭcis	,, dūco.		mŏlestus	,,	mōles.		stăbilis	,, stātum (sto).
fĭdes	,, fīdo.		nŏta	,,	nōtus.		stătio	,, stātum (sto).
quăter	,, quātuor.		săgax	,,	sāgio.			&c.

Note.—Fīdo, fīdus, infīdus, and *fīducia*, have *i* long. *Fĭdes, fĭdelis, perfĭdus*, and *perfĭdia*, have *i* short.

6. Compounds retain the quantity of the simple words from which they are formed; as, *occīdo* from *cădo*; *occĭdo* from *caedo*; *insānus* from *sānus.*

Exc.—1. In the first word of the compound; as,—

utrobīque
ubīvis
ubīnam
ubīque
} *fr.* ubĭ.

ibīdem ,, ibĭ.

quandŏquidem
quandŏcunque
} *fr.* quandŏ.

sīquidem ,, sĭ.
nīsi ,, nĭ.

2. In the second word of the compound,—

-jĕro *in composition fr.* jūro, *as* pejĕro.
-dĭcus ,, ,, dĭco, *as* veridĭcus.
-nūbus ,, ,, nūbo, *as* pronūbus.

Ambĭtus, *the participle, fr.* ĭtum, *sup. of* eo; *but* ambītus, *the noun, and* ambĭtio, *have* ī *short.*

7. Prepositions retain their natural quantity in composition; as, *ădeo, ădhuc* fr. *ăd; ăbeo, ăbhinc,* fr. *ăb; āmoveo* fr *ā.*

Exc.—*Pro* is short in Greek words, and in these Latin words—

prŏcella.	prŏfecto.	prŏfiteor.	prŏnepos.
prŏfanus.	prŏfestus.	prŏfugio.	prŏtervus.
prŏfari.	prŏficiscor.	prŏfundus.	

Pro is long or short in—

procumbo, profundo, procuro, propello, propago (s. and v.).

8. The Prefixes *sē, vē,* and *dī,* are long, except in *dīrimo* and *dīsertus. Rĕ* is short; but *rēfert,* it concerns, has *re* long, because from *res* (= *rei fert*).

Perfects and Supines of Verbs.

1. Dissyllabic Perfects have the penult long; as *vēni, vīdi, vīci.*

Exc.—bĭbi	*fr.*	bibo.	stĕti	*fr.*	sto.
dĕdi	,,	do.	stĭti	,,	sisto.
fĭdi	,,	findo.	tŭli	,,	fero.
scĭdi	,,	scindo.			

2. Dissyllabic Supines have the penult long; as, *cīsum, vīsum, jūtum.*

Exc.—cĭtum	*fr.*	cieo.	rūtum (obs.)	*fr.*	ruo.
dătum	,,	do.	sătum	,,	sero.
ĭtum	,,	eo.	sĭtum	,,	sino.
lĭtum	,,	lino.	stĭtum	,,	sisto.
quĭtum	,,	queo.	sūtum	,,	suo.
rătum	,,	reor.	fūturus	,,	(fūtum).

3. Reduplicated Perfects have the two first syllables short; as, *cĕcĭdi,* fr. *cado; tĕtĭgi, pĕpŭli.*

Exc.—*Caedo* has *cĕcīdi,* and *pedo, pĕpēdi,* with penult long.

4. Other Polysyllabic Perfects (unless compounds of reduplicated perfects, or of dissyllabic perfects excepted) have the penult long; as, *divīsi*, *audīvi*; but *repŭli*, because from *pepŭli*; *restĭti*, because from *stĭti*.

5. Polysyllabic Supines (unless compounds of dissyllabic supines excepted) have the penult long; as, *amātum*, *delētum*, *divīsum*; but *oblĭtum*, because from *lĭtum*.

EXC.—Supines in *itum*, from perfects not in *ivi*, have the penult short, as *domui*, *domĭtum*; *cognovi*, *cognĭtum*; *fugi*, *fugĭtum*. But *recenseo*, *recensui*, has *recensītum*.

FINAL SYLLABLES.

Monosyllables.

1. Monosyllables ending in a vowel or *h*, are long; as *ā*, *mē*, *sī*, *prō*, *tū*, *āh*, *prōh*.

EXC.—The enclitics, *-nĕ*, *-quĕ*, *-vĕ*; and the syllabics, *-cĕ*, *-tĕ*, *-ptĕ*, and *-psĕ*, are short.

2. Declinable monosyllables, ending in any single consonant except *d* and *t*, are long; as, *pĕs*, *jūs*, *ōs* (*oris*); *dīs*, *pār*; *nōs*, *hōc* (*abl.*); *dīc*, *sīs*, *ēs* (*edo*); but *ĭd*, *sĭt*.

EXC. 1.—The nouns, *cŏr*, *fĕl*, *lăc*, *mĕl*, *vĕr*, *ŏs* (*ossis*); the pronouns *quĭs* and *ĭs*; and the verbs, *făc*, *fĕr*, and *ĕs* (*esse*), are short.

2. *Hic* and *hoc* (not the ablative) in the pronoun, are common.

3. Indeclinable monosyllables ending in a single consonant, are short; as, *ăd*, *quŏt*, *sĕd*, *bĭs*.

EXC.—*Ăs*, *cūr*, *nōn*, *ēn*, *quīn*, *sīn*, *ērās*, and adverbs in *e*, are long.

Polysyllables.

1. Final *A* is short; as, *pennă* (nom. and voc.), *cornŭ*, *capitŭ*.

EXC.—Final *A* is long in—

1. The ablative singular of the first declension, as *pennā*, *eā*.
2. The vocative singular of nouns in *as*, as *Aenēā*, *Atlā*.

3. The imperative of the first conjugation, as *amā*.
4. Indeclinable words, as *contrā*, *anteā*, *trigintā*; except *pută*, for example, *eiă*, *ită*, and *quiă*.

2. Final *E* is short; as, *sermonĕ*, *amatĕ*, *bonĕ*, *legĕ*.

Exc.—Final *E* is long in—

1. The first and fifth declensions, as *Penelopē*, *diē*, *hodiē*, *quarē*.
2. The imperative singular of the second conjugation, as *docē*; but *cavĕ*, *valĕ*, and a few mere dissyllables, are short.
3. Adverbs from adjectives of the first and second declension, as *doctē*, *aegrē*, *optimē*; except *benĕ*, *malĕ*, *infernĕ*, and *supernĕ*.
4. Greek words, in which *e* is a contraction for *ea*, as *Tempē* for *Tempea*.
5. *Ohē*, *peregrē*, *ferē*, *fermē*, and *famē*.

3. Final *I* is long; as, *sermonī*, *audī*, *regnī*, *legī*.

Exc.—Final *I* is short in—

1. Greek datives and vocatives, as *Paridĭ*, *Thetĭ*.
2. *Nisĭ*, *quasĭ*, *sicutĭ*, and *cuĭ* dissyllabic.

Final *I* is common in—

Mihi, *tibi*, *sibi*, *ibi*, and *ubi*; but in the compounds, *necubĭ* and *sicubĭ*, it is always short.

4. Final *O* is long; as, *dominō*, *omninō*, *echō*, *quō*.

Exc.—1. Final *O* is short in—

Egŏ, *duŏ*, *octŏ*, *citŏ*, *immŏ*, *modŏ* (adv.), *quomodŏ*, and *cedŏ* (for *cedito*).

2. Final *O* is common in—

1. The nom. sing. of nouns of the third declension, having gen. in *nis*, and in the first person singular of verbs, as *sermo*, *amo*, *amabo*.
2. The adverbs, *adeo*, *denuo*, *ideo*, *illico*, *mutuo*, *postremo*, *profecto*, *sero*, *subito*, and *vero*.

5. Final *U* is always long, and final *Y* always short; as, *cornū*, *diū*, *misў*.

6. Final *C* has the vowel before it long; as, *halēc*.

Exc.—*Donĕc* is short.

7. Final *D*, *L*, (*M*), *N*, *R*, and *T*, have the vowel before them short, as *apŭd*, *animăl*, *pectĕn*, *pŭer*, *amăt*, *amavĭt*.

Exc.—1. The nominative of Greek masculines and feminines, and the accusative singular of Greek nouns of the first declension, have the vowel before *N* long, as *Titān*, *Lacedaemōn*, *Aeneān*, *Penelopēn*.

2. Greek nouns in *er* increasing in the genitive, and *Iber*, have the vowel before *R* long, as *aēr*, *aethēr*, *Ibēr*.

8. Final *AS* is long; as, *mensās*, *amās*, *pietās*.

Exc.—Final *AS* is short in—

1. The accusative plural of the third declension, as *heroăs*, *lampadăs*.
2. *-as*, gen. *ădis*, as *Arcăs*, *Pallăs*.
3. *Anăs*.

9. Final *ES* is long; as, *milĕs*, *amēs* (fr. *amo*), *capĭēs*, *quintiēs*, *haerēs* (noun and verb).

Exc.—Final *ES* is short in—

1. Nouns in *es* having a short increment in the genitive, as *obĕs*, *palmĕs*, *amĕs* (noun), *segĕs*; except *abiēs*, *ariēs*, *Cerēs*, *pariēs*, and the compounds of *pēs*.
2. Neuter nouns in *es*, as *panacĕs*, *hippomanĕs*.
3. Greek nominatives and vocatives plural, as *Troĕs*, *Arcadĕs*.
4. *Penĕs*.

10. Final *IS* is short; as, *brevĭs*, *lĕgĭs*, *lĕgĭs*, *sanguĭs*.

Exc.—Final *IS* is long in—

1. The plural of nouns and adjectives, as *pennīs*, *bonīs*, *vobīs*, *urbīs* (acc. plur., for *urbes*), *imprimīs*.
2. The nominative singular having the genitive in *-entis*, *-ĭnis*, or *-ītis*, as *Simoīs*, *Eleusīs*, *Quirīs*.
3. The second person singular of verbs, when the second person plural is *ītis*, as *audīs*, *possīs*, *abīs*.
4. The adverbs *gratīs* and *forīs*.

11. Final *OS* is long; as, *puerōs*, *bonōs*, *eōs*, *hanōs*.

Exc.—Final *OS* is short in—

1. The nominative (except in *os*, genitive *o*), genitive and accusative singular, as *Tenedŏs*, *lampadŏs*, *Argŏs*.
2. *Exŏs*, *compŏs*, and *impŏs*.

12. Final *US* is short; as, *ventŭs, bonŭs, tempŭs, temporibŭs, ullŭs, fructŭs* (nom. and voc. sing.), *rebŭs.*

EXC.—Final *US* is long in—

1. The genitive singular and the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural of the fourth declension, as *fructūs* (nom. acc., and voc. plur.).
2. The genitive singular of nouns in *o*, as *Didūs.*
3. The nominative singular, when the genitive has a long increment, or *-ŏdis*, as *tellūs, virtūs, dipūs.*

13. Final *YS* is short; as, *Capўs, Cotўs.*

EXC.—Final *YS* is long when it has the genitive in *ўnis*; as, *Trachўs.*

CHAPTER II.—VERSE.

A verse is a line of poetry, composed of a certain number of feet, and arranged in a particular manner.

A foot is composed of a certain number of syllables having a fixed quantity.

The most common feet are—

Of Two Syllables.

⏑ ⏑ *as* mĕŭs—PYRRHICHIUS (*πυρρίχη*, war-song—because this was its characteristic foot), or PYRRHIC.

⏑ — *as* mĕōs—IAMBUS (*ἰάπτω*, assail—because this foot was first used by the satirists).

— ⏑ *as* cārpĕ—TROCHAEUS (*τροχός*, a wheel—because this foot was especially used in quick time), or CHOREUS (*χορός*, a dance), or TROCHEE.

— — *as* cārpūnt—SPONDEUS (*σπονδή*, a drink-offering to the gods,—because this was the foot especially used in the music on such an occasion), or SPONDEE.

Of Three Syllables.

⏑ ⏑ ⏑ *as* lĕgĭtĕ—TRIBRACHYS (τρεῖς, three, and βραχές, short), or TRIBRACH.

– ⏑ ⏑ *as* cārpĭtĕ—DACTYLUS (δάκτυλος, a finger—from the number and length of the joints), or DACTYL.

⏑ ⏑ – *as* ăbĕūnt—ANAPAESTUS (ἀναπαίω, strike back, reverse—because a dactyl reversed), or ANAPAEST.

⏑ – – *as* lăbōrēs—BACCHIUS (βάκχος, Bacchus).

Of Four Syllables.

– ⏑ ⏑ – *as* ēxŏrĭēns—CHORIAMBUS (composed of a *choreus* and an *iambus*), or CHORIAMB.

When a verse is divided into feet, it is said to be *scanned* (*scando*, climb up by steps).

A verse containing	*one*	foot is called	*monometer.*
,,	,,	*two* feet ,,	*dimeter.*
,,	,,	*three* ,, ,,	*trimeter.*
,,	,,	*four* ,, ,,	*tetrameter.*
,,	,,	*five* ,, ,,	*pentameter.*
,,	,,	*six* ,, ,,	*hexameter.*
,,	,,	*seven* ,, ,,	*heptameter.*

Iambic and Trochaic (and, by some, also Anapaestic) verses are measured by *dipodes* (διποδία, pair of feet) or *syzygies* (συζυγία, a joining together). Thus, a verse consisting of *four* iambi or *four* trochees, is called *dimeter;* of *six*, *trimeter*, &c. The terms used to denote the number of *single* feet in these verses are—for four feet, *quaternarius;* for six, *senarius;* for seven, *septenarius;* for eight, *octonarius.*

Verses are named both from the *prevailing or characteristic* foot in them and the *number* of feet they contain. Thus, *Dactylic Hexameter* is the name of the verse of which the *dactyl* is the characteristic foot, and which contains *six* feet; *Iambic Dimeter* or *Quaternarius* has the *iambus* for its characteristic foot, and contains *two* dipodes, or *four* single feet.

A verse is called *Catalectic* (καταλήγω, stop short), when a syllable is *wanting* at the end to complete a certain measure; *Hypercatalectic*, when there is a syllable *more* than a certain measure; and *Acephalous* (ἀ, without, and κεφαλή, head, beginning), when a syllable is wanting at the *beginning* of the verse.

Elision.

In scanning—(*a*) A vowel or diphthong at the end of a word, coming before a vowel or *h* at the beginning of the next word, is *elided* (*elīdo*, strike out). This kind of elision is called *synaloepha* (συναλείφω, smear, or melt together). (*b*) Final *m* and the preceding vowel are also struck out before a vowel or *h*. This kind of elision is called *ecthlipsis* (ἐκθλίβω, squeeze out).

Both kinds of elision occur in the following lines,—

Digerit in numerum atque antro seclusa relinquit.

scanned as if—Digerit in numer' atqu' antro seclusa relinquit.

Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum.

scanned as if—Monstr' horrend', inform', ingens, cui lumen ademptum.

Ah, *hei*, *heu*, *O*, *pro*, *vae*, and *vah* are never elided, and *synaloepha* is sometimes neglected in other cases. Thus,—

O Pater! O hominum divumque aeterna potestas!

scanned as if—O Pater! O hominum divumqu' aeterna potestas!

Glauco et Panopēăe et Inōo Melicertae. *scanned as read.*

Note.—Synapheia (συνάπτω, join together,) is the union of two *verses* by elision of the last syllable of the first, before a vowel or *h* at the beginning of the second verse. Synapheia is most frequent when *que* ends the first verse.

Jamque iter emensi, turres ac tecta Latinorum
Ardua cernebant juvenes, muroque subibant.

scanned as if—Jamqu' iter emensi, turres ac tecta Latinor' Ardua, &c.

Synaeresis.

Synaerĕsis (*συναιρέω*, take together) is the contraction of two syllables within a word into one.

Semianimi lapsoque supervĕnit et pede collo.
scanned as if—Semyanimi lapsoque, &c.

Aedificant sectaque intexunt abiete costas.
scanned as if—Aedificant sectaqu' intexunt abyete costas,

Oscula libavit natae dehinc talia fatur.
scanned as if—Oscula libavit natae dinc, &c.

Caesura.

Caesūra (*caedo*, cut) is the syllable (*monosyllabic* or *strong* caesura) or syllables (*trochaic* or *weak* caesura) that remain over at the end of a word after a foot has been completed, and go to form the first part of another foot.

The caesuras are named after the *hemimers* (*ἡμι*, half, and *μέρος*, a foot,) or half feet in which they occur.

The *trihemimeral* caesura occurs in the *third* half foot.

,,	*penthemimeral*	,,	,,	*fifth*	,,
,,	*hephthemimeral*	,,	,,	*seventh*	,,
,,	*ennehemimeral*	,,	,,	*ninth*	,,
,,	*hendechemimeral*	,,	,,	*eleventh*	,,

Note.—Sometimes a short syllable forming a monosyllabic caesura, is reckoned long. This arises from the *ictus*, or emphasis, that naturally rests upon it, or the pause (*caesural pause*) that naturally occurs after it.

Final Syllable of a Verse.

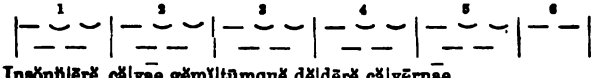
The last syllable of every verse is common—that is, a short syllable may occur at the end, though the measure requires it to be long, and *vice versa*.

Dactylic Verses.

Dactylic verses are so called because the dactyl is the prevailing foot in them.

Dactylic Hexameter, or *Heroic.*

The Dactylic Hexameter consists of six feet, of which the last is always a spondee, the fifth generally a dactyl, and the other four feet either dactyls or spondees. When the fifth foot is a spondee, the line is called *spondaic.*



Insŏnŭ|ērĕ că|vae gĕmĭ|tūmquĕ dĕ|dērĕ că|vērnae.
Nĕc dŭ|cēs nă|tōs ĕx|ōptā|tūmquĕ pă|rēntēm.
Et tān|d(em) āntĭ|quīs Cū|rēt(um) ād|lăbĭmŭr| ōrīs.
Nūnc rĕpĕ|t(o) hāec gĕnĕ|rī pōr|tēndĕrĕ| dēbĭtă| nōstrā.
Cārĕ dĕ|ūm sŏhŏ|lēs măg|nūm Jŏvĭs| īncrē|mēntūm (*sp.*).
Cōnstĭtĭt| ātqu(e) ŏcŭ|līs Phrўgĭ|(a) āgmĭnă| cīrcūm|spēxĭt (*sp.*).

Note 1.—A spondaic verse generally has a dactyl in the fourth foot and ends with a word of four syllables.

Note 2.—The principal caesura in the Hexameter is the *penthemimeral.* When it does not occur, the *trihemimeral* or *hephthemimeral* is employed, or both of them. The *enneahemimeral* and *hendecahemimeral* are not so common as the other caesuras.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12
Sae,pe fug|am Dana|ŏ, Tro|ja, cupi|e,re|re|lic,ta.

This line contains the *trihemimeral* (am), the *penthemimeral* (l), the *hephthemimeral* (ja), and the *enneahemimeral* (ere), caesuras, the last being a *trochaic* caesura.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12
Sus,pens|(l) Eu,rypy|lum, sci|tat,(um) o|ra,cula | Phoe,bi.

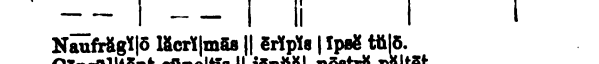
This line contains two caesuras, the *penthemimeral* (lum) and the *hephthemimeral* (tat).

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12
Par,turi|unt, mon|tes, nas|ce,tur | ri dicu|lus, mus.

This line contains the *trihemimeral* (unt), the *penthemimeral* (tes), and the *hendecahemimeral* (lus).

Dactylic Pentameter.

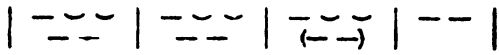
The Dactylic Pentameter consists of five feet. The first and second are either dactyls or spondees, then a semifoot, then two dactyls, and lastly another semifoot.



Naufrăgĭ|ō lăcrĭ|mās || ērĭpĭs | īpsĕ tŭ|ō.
Cōnsŭl|tĕnt cūnc|tīs || jānŭă| nōstră pă|tēt.
Păx Cĕrĕ|rēm nū|trīt || pācĭs ă|lūmna Cĕ|rēs.

Note.—The fifth half foot usually forms the last syllable of a word, and divides the verse into two equal parts.

Dactylic Tetrameter.



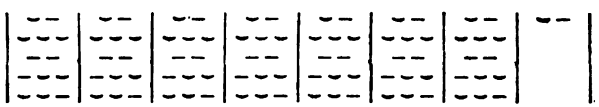
Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic.

Dactylic Dimeter, or *Adonic.*

Iambic Verses.

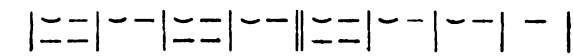
Pure iambic verses are those in which every foot is an *iambus.*

Iambic Tetrameter, or *Octonarius.*



Note.—This verse is used chiefly by the comic poets.

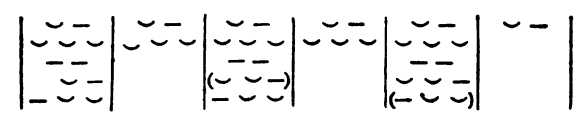
Iambic Tetrameter Catalectic, or *Hipponactic Tetrameter.*



Note 1.—The last syllable of the fourth foot is always the last syllable of a word.

Note 2.—The comic poets take as much liberty with this verse as with the Tetrameter.

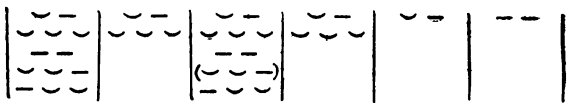
Iambic Trimeter, or *Senarius.*



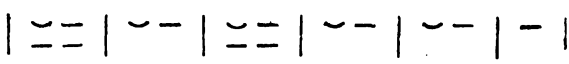
Note 1.—The cæsural pause most commonly occurs after the fifth semifoot.

Note 2.—The comic poets take as much liberty with this verse as with the Tetrameter.

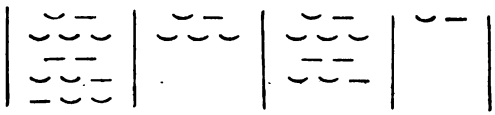
Scazon, Choliambus, or *Hipponactic Trimeter.*



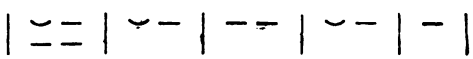
Iambic Trimeter, or *Senarius, Catalectic.*



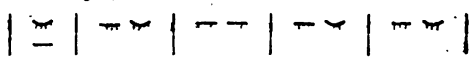
Iambic Dimeter, or *Quaternarius.*



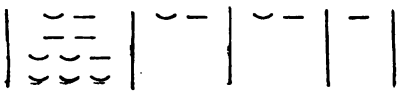
Iambic Dimeter Hypercatalectic, or *Archilochian.*



This verse may also be scanned as a Trochaic measure.



Iambic Dimeter Catalectic, or *Anacreontic.*

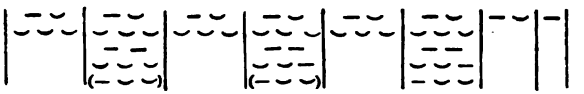


TROCHAIC VERSES.

Trochaic Tetrameter, or *Octonarius.*

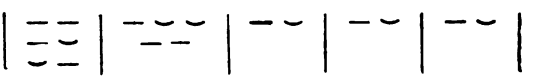
The complete Trochaic Tetrameter properly consists of eight feet, all trochees, except the last. The variations, however, are very extensive.

Trochaic Tetrameter Catalectic.

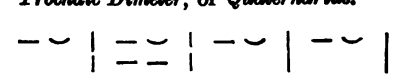


Sapphic.

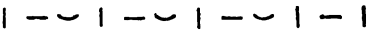
Phalaecian or *Hendecasyllabic.*



Trochaic Dimeter, or *Quaternarius.*



Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic.

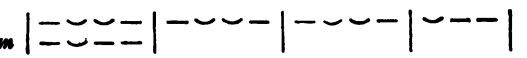


This kind of verse may also be scanned as Acephalous Iambic Dimeter.

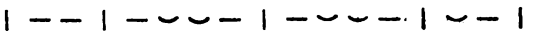
CHORIAMBIC VERSES.

Choriambic Pentameter.

Epichoriambic Tetrameter.

Horatian 

Choriambic Tetrameter, or *Asclepiadic.*

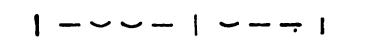


Choriambic Trimeter, or *Glyconic.*

This kind of verse may also be scanned as Dactylic Trimeter, when the first foot is a Spondee.

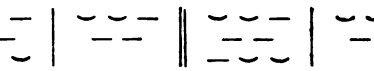
Choriambic Trimeter Catalectic, or *Pherecratic.*

Choriambic Dimeter.

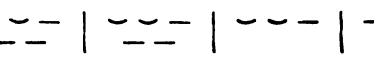


ANAPAESTIC VERSES.

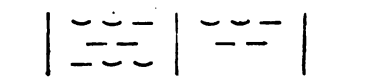
Anapaestic Tetrameter.



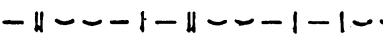
Anapaestic Tetrameter Catalectic, or *Paroemiac.*



Anapaestic Dimeter.



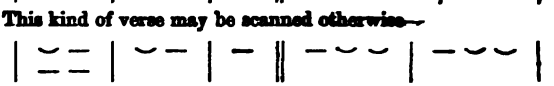
Ionic a minore.



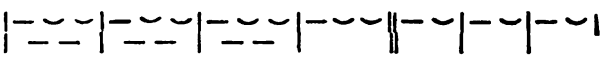
Mixed Verses.

Greater Alcaic.

This kind of verse may be scanned otherwise—



Archilochian Heptameter.



Lesser Alcaic.

Combination of Verses.

A poem with *one* kind of verse in it is called *monocōlon.*
,, ,, *two* kinds ,, ,, *dicōlon.*
,, ,, *three* ,, ,, *tricōlon.*
,, ,, *more than three* ,, *polycōlon.*

A poem in stanzas of *two* lines is called *distrŏphon.*
,, ,, *three* ,, ,, *tristrŏphon.*
,, ,, *four* ,, ,, *tetrastrŏphon.*
,, ,, *five* ,, ,, *pentastrŏphon.*

Examples,—

Elegiac Stanza.

A poem written in the Elegiac stanza is called *dicolon distrophon,* because *two* kinds of verse are used, and the stanza consists of *two* lines.

Jura dabat populis posito modo praetor aratro, *Dact. Hex.*
Et levis argenti lamina crimen erat. *Dact. Pent.*

Sapphic Stanza.

A poem written in the Sapphic stanza is called *dicolon tetrastrophon*, because *two* kinds of verse are used, and the stanza consists of *four* lines.

Jam satis terris nivis atque dirae	*Sapphic.*
Grandinis misit Pater, et, rubente	,,
Dextera sacras jaculatus arces	,,
Terruit urbem.	*Adonic.*

Horatian Stanza.

A poem written in the Horatian stanza is called *tricolon tetrastrophon*, because *three* kinds of verse are used, and the stanza consists of *four* lines.

Permitte divis cetera; qui simul	*Greater Alcaic.*
Stravere ventos, aequore fervido	,,
Deproeliantes, nec cupressi	*Archilochian.*
Nec veteres agitantur orni.	*Lesser Alcaic.*

APPENDICES.

APPENDIX A.

MEMORIAL LINES.

I.—*Exceptions in Gender.*

1. *Nouns in* us, *2nd decl.*
Feminine are *alvus, domus,*
Dialectus, ficus, humus.
Neuter *pelagus* and *virus ;*
Better neuter too is *vulgus.*

2. *Nouns in* o, er, or, os, *3rd decl.*
Feminine in *o, or, os,*
Caro, echo, arbor, cos,
Dos too. Neuter four in *er,*
Cadaver, iter, verber, ver ;
Two nouns, *os ;* and four in *or,*
Ador, aequor, marmor, cor.

3. *Nouns in* io, do, go, *3rd decl.*
Masculine are *scipio,*
Ordo, ligo, harpago,
Cardo, margo, pugio,
Titio, and *septemtrio.*

4. *Nouns in* s *preceded by a consonant and in* x, *3rd decl.*
Dens, a tooth, and *mons,* a mountain,
Pons, a bridge, and *fons,* a fountain,
Grex, a flock, are masculine,
But *supellex* feminine.
Masculine are *vas* and *as ;*
Neuter though is *vasis vas.*

5. *Nouns in* es, *3rd decl.*
Masculine in *es* are *pes,*
Gurges, ceeres, paries,
Limes, stipes, and *poples ;*
The only neuter one is *aes.*

6. *Nouns in* is, *3rd decl.*
Masculine in *is* are *mensis,*
Axis, collis, lapis, ensis,
Fascis, fustis, postis, sanguis,
Orbis, vomis, vectis, unguis ;
Often, *torquis, cinis, pulvis.*

7. *Nouns in* aus *and* us, *3rd decl.*
Two in *aus* and nine in *us,*
Fraus, laus, incus, servitus,
Pecus pecudis, senectus,
Palus, salus, and *juventus,*
Feminine are, with *tellus, virtus.*

8. *Nouns in* us, *4th decl.*
Let fourth declension nouns in *us*
Be masculine, save *porticus,*
Domus, manus, acus, tribus ;
Add to these the plural *idus.*

II.—*Exceptions in Case.*

1. *Gen. sing. of nouns in* er, *2nd decl.*
Gener, socer, and *puer,*
Iber, Liber, Celtiber,
Vesper, have throughout the *er.*

2. *Gen. plur of nouns, 3rd decl.*
Ium, *Samnis, linter, dos,*
Uter, venter, caro, cos,
Nix, nox, Quiris, ossis os,
Lar, sal, cohors, imber, glis,
Cor, mus, (faux), and also *lis.*

3. *Dat. and abl. plur., 4th decl.*
Ubus give to *arcus, acus,*
Artus, partus, tribus, lacus,
Specus too. But *portus, veru,*
-ibus, -ubus have, like *genu.*

4. *Adjectives in* er, *1st and 2nd decl.*
Adjectives in *-ger* and *-fer,*
Miser, asper, lacer, exter,
Tener, prosper, rarely *dexter,*
Keep throughout the *e* of *er.*

5. *Irregular Adjectives, 1st and 2nd decl.*
Alius, alter, unus, ullus,
Uter, neuter, solus, nullus,
Totus have, as you may see,
Genitive *ius,* dative *i.*

6. *Abl. sing. of Adjectives, 3rd decl.*
Pauper, juvenis, and *hospes,*
Compos, impos, senex, sospes,
Ales, compound *pes, superstes,*
Have *e* only in the last case.

7. *Gen. plur. of Adjectives, 3rd decl.*
Um have *celer, consors, dives,*
Memor, inops, uber, praeceps,
Vigil, watchful, also *supplex,*
Compounds too in *-ceps and -fex.*

8. *Thirteen Adjectives in* er *of 3rd decl.*
Acer, alăcer, campester,
Celer, celĕber, equester,
Puter, vollăcer, pedester,
Add *paluster* and *silvester,*
And *salŭber,* and *terrester.*

APPENDIX B.

LIST OF VERBS.

I.—*First Conjugation.*

Most verbs of the First Conjugation have the perfect in *āvi,* and the supine in *ātum;* as,—

Abundo, *abound.*
Aedifĭco, *build.*
Amo, *love.*
Aro, *plough.*
Brĕvio, *shorten.*
Caelo, *emboss.*
Cēlo, *conceal.*
Certo, *contend.*
Clāmo, *cry out.*
Crĕmo, *burn.*
Creo, *create.*
Crŭcio, *torture.*
Cūro, *cause.*
Damno, *condemn.*
Dĭco, *dedicate.*
Dōno, *present.*
Fraudo, *defraud.*
Fŭgo, *put to flight.*
Impĕro, *command.*
Impĕtro, *obtain by request.*

Inundo, *overflow.*
Jacto, *throw, boast.*
Jurgo, *chide.*
Labōro, *labour.*
Lēgo, *send as ambassador.*
Migro, *remove (neut.).*
Mūto, *change.*
Narro, *relate.*
Nĕco, *kill.*
Nĕgo, *deny.*
Nuntio, *announce.*
Opto, *wish.*
Orno, *adorn.*
Oro, *beg.*
Păro, *prepare.*
Plōro, *bewail.*
Porto, *carry.*
Prŏbo, *approve.*
Pugno, *fight.*
Pŭto, *think, prune.*
Rŏgo, *ask.*
Saucio, *wound.*
Spēro, *hope.*
Spolio, *plunder.*
Vasto, *lay waste.*
Vīto, *shun.*
Vŏco, *call.*
Vulnĕro, *wound.*

The following verbs are excepted,—

Cŭb-o, -ŭi, -ĭtum, *lie down.*
Dŏm-o, „ „ *tame.*
Sŏn-o, „ „ *sound.*
Tŏn-o, „ „ *thunder.*
Vĕt-o, „ „ *forbid.*
Crĕp-o, „ „ *make a noise.*
Discrĕp-o, -ŭi & -āvi, -ĭtum, *disagree.*
Do, dĕdi, dătum, dăre, *give.*
circum-do, -dĕdi, -dătum, *surround.*
pessum-do, „ „ *ruin.*
venum-do, „ „ *sell.*
Enĕc-o, -ŭi & -āvi, -tum, *kill.*
Frĭc-o, -ŭi, -tum & -ātum, *rub.*
Jŭvo, jūvi, jūtum, *help.*
ad-jŭvo, -jūvi, -jūtum, *help.*
Lăvo, lāvi, lautum, lotum, and lavātum, *wash.*
Pōt-o, -āvi, -um, & -ātum, *drink.*
Sĕc-o, -ŭi, -tum, *cut.*
Sto, stĕti, stātum, *stand.*
con-sto, -stĭti, -stĭtum, & -stātum, *cost, consist.*
prae-sto, -stĭti, -stĭtum, & -stātum, *perform.*
disto, ——, ——, *to be distant.*
The rest of the compounds of *sto* have a perfect, but no supine.
Plĭc-o, ——, -ĭtum & -ātum, *fold.*
applĭc-o, -ŭi, & -āvi, -ĭtum and -ātum, *apply.*
explĭc-o, -ui, -ĭtum, *unfold.*
explĭc-o, -āvi, -ātum, *explain.*
duplĭc-o, „ „ *double.*
multiplĭc-o, „ *multiply.*
replĭc-o, „ „ *unfold.*
supplĭco, „ „ *supplicate.*
Mĭc-o, -ŭi, ——, *glitter.*
emĭc-o, -ui, -ātum, *shine forth.*
dimĭc-o, -āvi, -ātum, *fight.*
Lăb-o, -āvi, ——, *totter.*
Nexo, ——, ——, *bind.*

II.—*Second Conjugation.*

Many verbs of the Second Conjugation have the perfect in *ŭi*, and the Supine in *ĭtum*; as,—

Căl-eo, -ŭi, -ĭtum, *to be warm.*
Căr-eo, „ „ *want.*
Dŏl-eo, „ „ *grieve.*
Hăb-eo, „ „ *have.*
adhĭb-eo, „ *employ.*
dēb-eo, „ „ *owe.*
praeb-eo, „ *afford.*
Jăc-eo, „ „ *lie.*
Mĕr-eo, „ „ *deserve.*
Mŏn-eo, „ „ *warn.*
Nŏc-eo, -ŭi, -ĭtum, *hurt.*
Pār-eo, „ „ *obey.*
appār-eo, „ „ *appear.*
Plăc-eo, „ „ *please.*
displĭc-eo, „ „ *displease.*
Terr-eo, „ „ *terrify.*
Văl-eo, „ „ *to be strong.*
Tăc-eo, „ „ *to be silent.*
reticeo, „ ——, *to be silent.*

The following verbs are more or less irregular,—

in *beo.*

Jăbeo, jussi, jussum, *order.*
Sorbeo, sorpsi, sorptum, *swallow.*

in *ceo.*

Dŏc-eo, -ŭi, -tum, *teach.*
Misc-eo, -ŭi, mistum & mixtum, *mix.*
mul-ceo, -si, -sum, *soothe.*
Arc-eo, -ŭi, ——, *drive away.*
exerc-eo, -ŭi, -ĭtum, *exercise.*

in *deo.*

Ar-deo, -si, -sum, *burn.*
Pran-deo, -di, -sum, *dine.*
Rīdeo, rīsi, rīsum, *laugh.*
Sĕdeo, sēdi, sessum, *sit.*
ob-sĭdeo, -sēdi, -sessum,* *besiege.*
Suā-deo, -si, -sum, *advise.*
Vĭdeo, vīdi, vīsum, *see.*
Mordeo, momordi, morsum, *bite.*
remordeo, remordi, remorsum, *vex.*
Pendeo, pependi, pensum, *hang.*
impendeo, impendi, ——, *overhang.*
Spondeo, spopondi, sponsum, *promise.*
despon-deo, -di, -sum, *betrothe.*
Tondeo, totondi, tonsum, *clip.*
Strī-deo, -di, ———, *make a noise.*
Stŭd-eo, -ui, ——, *study.*

in *geo.*

Au-geo, -xi, -ctum, *increase.*
Indul-geo, -si, -tum, *indulge.*
Mul-geo, -si, -sum, *milk.*
Ter-geo, -si, -sum, *wipe.*
Al-geo, -si, —— *to be chill.*
Eg-eo, -ui, ——, *need.*
Indĭg-eo, -ui, ——, *need.*
Frī-geo, -xi, ——, *to be cold.*
Ful-geo, -si, ——, *shine.*
Lū-geo, -xi, ——, *bewail.*
Tur-geo, -si, ——, *swell.*
Ur-geo, -si, ——, *urge.*

in *ieo.*

Vi-eo, -ēvi, -ētum, *plait.*
Cieo, ——, cĭtum, *stir.*

in *leo.*

Aböl-eo, -ēvi, -ĭtum, *abolish.*
Adŏl-eo, -ēvi, adultum, *burn.*
Compl-eo, -ēvi, -ētum, *fill.*
Dēl-eo, -ēvi, -ētum, *destroy.*
Fl-eo, -ēvi, -ētum, *weep.*
Impl-eo, -ēvi, -ētum, *fill.*
Call-eo, -ui, ——, *know.*
Sīl-eo, -ui, ——, *to be silent.*
Polleo, ——, ——, *to be powerful.*

in *meo.*

Tĭm-eo, -ŭi, ——, *fear.*

in *neo.*

Măn-eo, -si, -sum, *remain.*
Neo, nēvi, nētum, *spin.*
Tĕn-eo, -ui, -tum, *hold.*
retĭn-eo, -ui, -tentum, *retain.*
sustĭn-eo, -ui, -tentum, *sustain.*
abstĭn-eo, -ui, ——, *abstain.*
attĭn-eo, -ui ——, *concern.*
pertĭn-eo, -ui, ——, *pertain.*
Cān-eo, -ui, ——, *to be hoary.*
Immĭn-eo, -ui, ——, *hang over.*

in *queo.*

Torqueo, torsi, tortum, *twist.*

in *reo.*

Hae-reo, -si, -sum, *stick.*
Torr-eo, -ui, tostum, *roast.*
Flōr-eo, -ui, ——, *flourish.*
Horr-eo, -ui, ——, *shudder.*

in *seo.*

Cens-eo, -ui, -um, *reckon, think.*
recens-eo, -ui, -ĭtum, *review.*

in *teo.*

Lăt-eo, -ui, ——, *lurk.*
Nĭt-eo, -ui, ——, *shine.*
Păt-eo, -ui, ——, *lie open.*
Scăteo, ——, ——, *gush forth.*

in *veo.*

Căveo, cāvi, cautum, *beware.*

* *Desideo*, sit idle, *dissideo*, disagree, *praesideo*, preside, and *residco*, remain, have a perf. but no sup.

Făveo, fāvi, fautum, *favour.*
Fŏveo, fōvi, fotum, *cherish.*
Mŏveo, mōvi, motum, *move.*
Vŏveo, vōvi, votum, *vow.*
Con-nīveo, *-nīvi & -nixi, ——, *wink.*
Ferv-eo, -i, & ferbui, ——, *glow.*
Pă-veo, -vi, ——, *quake with fear.*

III.—*Third Conjugation.*

in *bo.*

Ac-cumbo, -cubui, -cubĭtum, *recline.*
Bĭbo, bĭbi, bibĭtum, *drink.*
Nūbo, nupsi *or* nupta sum, nuptum, *marry* (of a woman).
Lam-bo, -bi, ——, *lick.*

in *co.*

Abol-esco, -ēvi, -ĭtum, *decay.*
Adol-esco, -ēvi, adultum, *grow up.*
Con-suesco, -suēvi, -suētum, *to be wont.*
Cresco, crēvi, crētum, *grow.*
Dīco, dixi, dictum, *say.*
Dūco, duxi, ductum, *lead.*
Ico, īci, ictum, *strike.*
Nosco, nōvi, nōtum, *learn.*
ag-nosco, -nōvi, -nĭtum, *acknowledge.*
cog-nosco, -nōvi, -nĭtum, *learn.*
ig-nosco, -nōvi, -nōtum, *pardon.*
Pasco, pāvi, pastum, *feed.*
Qui-esco, -ēvi, -ētum, *rest.*
Scisco, scīvi, scītum, *enact.*
Vinco, vīci, victum, *conquer.*
Parco, peperci, parsum *or* (parcĭtum), *spare.*
Disco, didĭci, ——, *learn.*
Posco, poposci, ——, *demand.*
Comp-esco, -escui, ——, *restrain.*
Ex-ardesco, -arsi, ——, *blaze up.*
Hisco, ——, ——, *gape.*
Mitesco, ——, ——, *to grow ripe.*

in *do.*

Cēdo, cessi, cessum, *yield.*
Clau-do, -si, -sum, *shut.*
inclū-do, -si, -sum, *enclose.*
Defen-do, -di, -sum, *defend.*
Di-vĭdo, -vīsi, -vīsum, *divide.*
Edo, ēdi, ēsum, *eat.*
Findo, fĭdi, fissum, *cleave.*
Fundo, fūdi, fūsum, *pour out.*
Lae-do, -si, -sum, *hurt.*
elī-do, -si, -sum, *strike out.*
Lū-do, -si, -sum, *play.*
Man-do, -di, -sum, *chew.*
Pan-do, -di, passum *or* (pansum) *spread.*
Plau-do, -si, -sum, *applaud.*
Rā-do, -si, -sum, *scrape.*
Rō-do, -si, -sum, *gnaw.*
Scindo, scĭdi, scissum, *cut.*
Trū-do, -si, -sum, *thrust.*
Ad-do, -dĭdi, -dĭtum, *add.*
Crē-do, „ „ *believe.*
E-do, „ „ *bring forth.*
Red-do, „ „ *give back.*
Cădo, cecĭdi, cāsum, *fall.*
occĭdo, occĭdi, occāsum,* *fall down.*
accĭdo, accĭdi, ——, *happen.*
Caedo, cecīdi, caesum, *cut, kill.*
occīdo, occīdi, occīsum, *kill.*
Pendo, pependi, pensum, *hang.*
im-pendo, -pendi, -pensum, *spend.*
Tendo, tetendi, tensum & tentum, *stretch.*
atten-do, -di, -tum, *attend.*
osten-do, -di, -sum (-tum), *show.*
Tundo, tutŭdi, tunsum (tusum), *beat.*
con-tundo, -tŭdi, -tūsum, *break in pieces.*
Sīdo, sīdi, ——, *sink.*
con-sīdo, -sēdi, -sessum, *sit down.*
Strīdo, strīdi, ——, *make a noise.*
Vādo, ——, ——, *go.*
evā-do, -si, -sum, *escape.*

* *Incido* and *recido* are conjugated in the same way. All other compounds want the supine.

in *go*.*

af-flĭgo, -flixi, -flictum, *dash against, afflict.*
Ago, ēgi, actum, *drive, do.*
cō-go, -ēgi, -actum, *force.*
dēgo, degi, ——, *spend (time).*
ambĭgo, ——, ——, *doubt.*
Cin-go, -xi, -ctum, *surround.*
Fīgo, fixi, fixum, *fix.*
Fingo, finxi, fictum, *feign.*
Frango, frēgi, fractum, *break.*
con-fringo, -frēgi, -fractum, *break in pieces.*
Frīgo, frixi, frixum & frictum, *fry.*
Jungo, junxi, junctum, *join.*
Lĕgo, lēgi, lectum, *read, gather.*
de-lĭgo, -lēgi, -lectum, *choose.*
di-lĭgo, -lexi, -lectum, *love.*
intel-lĭgo, -lexi, -lectum, *understand.*
neg-lĭgo, -lexi, -lectum, *neglect.*
Mer-go, -si, -sum, *dip.*
Pingo, pinxi, pictum, *paint.*
Rĕgo, rexi, rectum, *direct.*
di-rĭgo, -rexi, -rectum, *direct.*
pergo, perrexi, perrectum, *proceed.*
surgo, surrexi, surrectum, *arise.*
Spar-go, -si, -sum, *spread.*
disper-go, -si, -sum, *scatter.*
Stringo, strinxi, strictum, *draw tight.*
Tĕgo, texi, tectum, *cover.*
Ter-go, -si, -sum, *wipe.*
Tin-go, -xi, -ctum, *dip.*
Pango, pepĭgi & pēgi, pactum, *bargain.*
Pungo, pupŭgi, punctum, *prick.*
Tango, tetĭgi, tactum, *touch.*
con-tingo, -tĭgi, -tactum, *touch, happen.*
An-go, -xi, ——, *vex.*
Clan-go, -xi, ——, *sound.*
Vergo, ——, ——, *incline.*

in *guo*.

Tinguo, tinxi, tinctum, *dip.*
ex-tinguo, -tinxi, -tinctum, *extinguish.*

in *ho*.

Trā-ho, -xi, -ctum, *draw.*
Vĕ-ho, -xi, -ctum, *carry.*

in *io*.

Al-lĭcio, -lexi, -lectum, *allure.*
A-spĭcio, -spexi, -spectum, *behold.*
Căpio, cēpi, captum, *take.*
ac-cĭpio, -cēpi, -ceptum, *accept.*
Cŭp-io, -īvi, -ītum, *desire.*
E-lĭcio, -licui, -licitum, *draw out.*
Făcio, fēci, factum, *make, do.*
ef-fĭcio, -fēci, -fectum, *effect.*
Fŏdio, fōdi, fossum, *dig.*
Fŭgio, fūgi, fugĭtum, *flee.*
Jăcio, jēci, jactum, *throw.*
ad-jĭcio, -jēci, -jectum, *add.*
Quătio, (quassi), quassum, *shake.*
ex-cŭtio, -cussi, -cussum, *shake out.*
Răp-io, -ui, -tum, *seize.*
e-rĭpio, -ripui, -reptum, *rescue.*
Părio, pepĕri, partum & parĭtum,* *bring forth.*
Săp-io, -īvi and -ui, ——, *to taste.*

in *lo*.

Alo, alui, altum & alĭtum, *nourish.*
Cŏl-o, -ui, cultum, *cultivate.*
Consŭl-o, -ui, -tum, *consult.*
Mŏ-lo, -ui, -ĭtum, *grind.*
Occŭl-o, -ui, -tum, *conceal.*
Per-cello, -cŭli, -culsum, *beat down.*
Tollo, sustŭli, sublātum, *lift up.*
attollo, ——, ——, *lift up.*
extollo, ——, ——, *extol.*
Vello, velli & vulsi, vulsum,† *pluck.*
Fallo, fefelli, falsum, *deceive.*
re-fello, -felli, ——, *to refute.*
Pello, pepŭli, pulsum, *drive.*
ex-pello, -pŭli, -pulsum, *expel.*
Ex-cello, -cellui, ——, *excel.*
Psall-o, -i, ———, *play on a stringed instrument.*

* *Pario* has perf. part. *partus*, but fut. part. *pariturus*.
† *Devello, evello*, and *pervello*, have only *-velli* in the perf.

in *mo*.

Emo, ēmi, emptum, (*take*), *buy*.
dir-ĭmo, -ēmi, -emptum, *to separate*.
red-ĭmo, -ēmi, -emptum, *buy back*.
cōm-o, -psi, -ptum, *arrange*.
dĕm-o, -psi, -ptum, *take away*.
prōm-o, -psi, -ptum, *bring out*.
sūm-o, -psi, -ptum, *take up*.
Frĕm-o, -ui, -ĭtum, *make a noise*.
Gĕm-o, -ui, -ĭtum, *groan*.
Prĕmo, pressi, pressum, *press*.
op-prĭmo, -pressi, -pressum, *crush*.
Trĕm-o, -ui, ——, *tremble*.

in *no*.

Cerno, (crēvi, crētum), *separate, discern*.
dis-cerno, -crēvi, -crētum, *distinguish*.
Gigno, genui, genĭtum, *beget*.
Lĭno, lēvi & līvi, lĭtum, *daub*.
ob-lĭno, -lēvi, -lĭtum, *bedaub*.
Pōno, posui, posĭtum, *place*.
Sĭno, sīvi, sĭtum, *allow*.
desĭno, desii, desĭtum, *cease*.
Sperno, sprēvi, sprētum, *despise*.
Sterno, strāvi, strātum, *strew*.
Temno (tempsi, temptum), *despise*.
con-temno, -tempsi, -temptum, *despise*.
Căno, cecĭni, cantum, *sing*.
con-cĭno, -cinui, ——, *sound together*.

in *po*.

Carp-o, -si, -tum, *pluck*.
dis-cerpo, -cerpsi, -cerptum, *rend*.
Rumpo, rūpi, ruptum, *break*.
Strĕp-o, -ui, -ĭtum, *make a noise*.

in *quo*.

Cŏquo, coxi, coctum, *cook*.
Linquo, līqui, ——, *leave*.
re-linquo, -līqui, -lictum, *leave*.

in *ro*.

Gĕro, gessi, gestum, *carry on, wear*.
Quae-ro, sīvi, -sītum, *seek*.
in-quīro, -quisīvi,-quisītum, *inquire*.
Sĕro, sēvi, sătum, *sow*.
con-sĕro, -sēvi, -sĭtum, *plant*.
(Sĕro, serui, sertum), *connect*.
con-sĕro, -serui, -sertum, *connect*.
Tĕro, trīvi, trītum, *rub*.
Uro, ussi, ustum, *burn*.
Verro, verri, versum, *sweep*.
Curro, cucurri, cursum, *run*.
re-curro, -curri, -cursum, *run back*.
Căro, ——, ——, *card*.
Fŭro, ——, ——, *rage*.

in *so*.

Arcess-o, -īvi, -ītum, *send for*.
Capess-o, -īvi, -ītum, *undertake*.
Lacess-o, -īvi, -ītum, *provoke*.
Incess-o, -īvi & -i, ——, *attack*.
Deps-o, -ui, -tum, *knead*.
Pins-o, -ui & -i, -um, -ĭtum, & pistum, *pound*.
Vīso, visi, ——, *visit*.

in *to*.

Flecto, flexi, flexum, *bend*.
Mĕto, messui, messum, *reap*.
Mitto, misi, missum, *send*.
Necto, nexi & nexui, nexum, *tie*.
an-necto, -nexui, -nexum, *annex*.
Pecto, pexi & pexui, pexum, *comb*.
Plecto, plexi & plexui, plexum, *plait*.
Pĕt-o, -īvi, -ītum, *ask*.
Verto, verti, versum, *turn*.
Sisto, stĭti, stătum, *check*.
Sisto, ——, ——, *stand still*.

in *uo*.

Arg-ŭo, -ŭi, -ūtum, *prove*.
Ex-ŭo, -ŭi, -ūtum, *put off*.
Fluo, fluxi, fluxum, *flow*.
Ind-ŭo, -ŭi, -ūtum, *put on*.
Luo, lui, (luĭtum), *expiate*.
di-lŭo, -lŭi, -lūtum, *wash away*.
Mĕt-uo, -ŭi, (-ūtum), *fear*.
Mĭn-ŭo, -ŭi, -ūtum, *lessen*.
Ruo, rui, ruĭtum, *rush*.
di-rŭo, -rŭi, -rūtum, *demolish*.

Stăt-ŭo, -ŭi, (-ūtum), *determine.*
constĭt-ŭo, -ŭi, -ūtum, *determine.*
Struo, struxi, structum, *build.*
Trĭb-ŭo, -ŭi, -ūtum, *allot.*
Ann-ŭo, -ŭi, ——, *assent.*
Congr-ŭo, -ŭi, ——, *agree.*
Pluo, plui, ——, *rain.*
Resp-ŭo, -ŭi, ——, *reject.*
in *vo.*
Sol-vo, -vi, -ūtum, *loose.*
Vol-vo, -vi, -ūtum, *roll.*
Vīvo, vixi, victum, *live.*
in *xo.*
Tex-o, -ŭi, -tum, *weave.*

IV.—*Fourth Conjugation.*

Most verbs of the Fourth Conjugation have the perfect in *īvi*, and the supine in *ītum*; as,—

Audio, *hear.*
obēdio, *obey.*
Condio, *season.*
Custōdio, *keep.*
Dormio, *sleep.*
Erŭdio, *instruct.*
Expĕdio, *disentangle.*
Fastīdio, *disdain.*
Fīnio, *finish.*
Impĕdio, *entangle, hinder.*
Insānio, *to be mad.*
Irrētio, *ensnare.*
Lēnio, *mitigate.*
Mollio, *soften.*
Mūnio, *fortify.*
Nūtrio, *nourish.*
Pŏlio, *polish.*
Pūnio, *punish.*
Redĭmio, *bind round.*
Saevio, *rage.*
Scio, *know.*
nescio, *not know.*
Servio, *serve.*
Sĭtio, *thirst.*
Sōpio, *lull to sleep.*
Vestio, *clothe.*

The following verbs are excepted,—

Am-ĭcio, -icui, and -ixi, -ictum, *clothe.*
Apĕr-io, -ui, -tum, *open.*
Compĕr-io, -i, -tum, *ascertain.*
Repĕr-io, -i, -tum, *find.*
Far-cio, -si, -tum, *cram.*
refer-cio, -si, -tum, *cram.*
Ful-cio, -si, -tum, *support.*
Hau-rio, -si, -stum, *draw up.*
San-cio, -xi, -ctum, and -cītum, *ratify.*
Sar-cio, -si, -tum, *mend.*
Săl-io, -ui, & -ii, -tum, *leap.*
de-sĭlio, -silui & -silii, -sultum, *leap down.*
pro-sĭlio, -silui & -silii, ——, *leap forth.*
Sen-tio, -si, -sum, *feel.*
Sep-ĕlio, -elivi, -ultum, *bury.*
Sēp-io, -si, -tum, *hedge in.*
Vĕnio, vēni, ventum, *come.*
Vin-cio, -xi, -ctum, *bind.*
Gest-io, -īvi, ——, *leap for joy.*
Inept-io, -īvi, ——, *trifle.*
Fĕrio, ——, ——, *strike.*

V.—*Deponent Verbs.*

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Adūlor, *flatter.*
Arbĭtror, *suppose.*
Aspernor, *despise.*
Assentor, *flatter.*
Auxilĭor, *aid.*
Comĭtor, *accompany.*
Cōnor, *attempt.*
Conspĭcor, *behold.*
Contemplor, *contemplate.*
Cunctor, *delay.*
percontor, *inquire.*

Dignor, *deem worthy.*
Glŏrior, *boast.*
Grassor, *advance.*
Gratŭlor, *congratulate.*
Hortor, *exhort.*
Imĭtor, *imitate.*
Insĭdior, *plot.*
Laetor, *rejoice.*
Lucror, *gain.*
Mĭnor, *threaten.*
Mīror, *wonder.*
Mŏror, *delay.*
Opīnor, *think.*
Periclĭtor, *try.*
Prĕcor, *pray.*
Recordor, *remember.*
Suspĭcor, *suspect.*
Tūtor, *defend.*
Văgor, *wander.*
Venĕror, *venerate.*
Vēnor, *hunt.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Fătĕor, fassus, *confess.*
con-fĭteor, -fessus, *confess.*
Lĭceor, licĭtus, *bid a price.*
pol-lĭceor, -licĭtus, *promise.*
Misĕr-eor, -ĭtus, & -tus, *pity.*
Reor, rătus, *think.*
Tueor, tuĭtus, *defend.*
in-tueor, -tuĭtus, *behold.*
Vĕreor, verĭtus, *fear.*
Mĕdeor, ———, *heal.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Adipiscor, adeptus, *obtain.*
Amplector, amplexus, *embrace.*
Comminiscor, commentus, *devise.*
Expergiscor, experrectus, *awake.*
Fruor, fructus *or* fruĭtus, *enjoy.*
Fungor, functus, *discharge.*
(Grădior, gressus), *proceed.*
aggrĕdior, aggressus, *attack.*
Invĕhor, invectus, *inveigh.*
Lābor, lapsus, *glide.*
Līquor, liquefactus, *melt.*
Lŏquor, locutus, *speak.*
Mŏrior, mortuus, *die.*
(*fut. part.*, moriturus.)
Nanciscor, nactus, *obtain.*
Nascor, natus, *to be born.*
(*fut. part.*, nasciturus.)
Nītor, nisus & nixus, *lean on.*
Obliviscor, oblītus, *forget.*
Paciscor, pactus, *bargain.*
Pătior, passus, *suffer.*
per-pĕtior, -pessus, *endure.*
Proficiscor, profectus, *set out.*
Quĕror, questus, *complain.*
Sĕquor, secutus, *follow.*
Ulciscor, ultus, *avenge.*
Ūtor, usus, *use.*
Defetiscor, ———,* *to be weary.*
Irascor, ———,* *to be angry.*
Reminiscor, ———, *remember.*
Vescor, ———, *eat.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Assentior, assensus, *assent.*
Blandior, blandītus, *flatter.*
Expĕrior, expertus, *try.*
Largior, largītus, *bestow.*
Mentior, mentītus, *lie.*
Mētior, mensus, *measure.*
Mōlior, molītus, *toil.*
Oppĕrior, oppertus, *wait for.*
Ordior, orsus, *begin.*
Orior, ortus,† *arise.*
(*fut. part.*, oriturus.)
Partior, partītus, *divide.*
Pōtior, potītus, *get possession of.*
Sortior, sortītus, *cast lots.*

* *Defessus* and *iratus* are adjectives.

† The pres. inf. of *orior* is always of the 4th conjug. The impf. subj. is, in prose, usually *orīrer*, of the 4th. The other parts are of the 3rd conjug.; as, *orĭtur*, *orĭmur*, &c. Its compounds also, *adorior*, *exorior*, &c., have the same peculiarities, but they want the participle in *rus*.

VI.—*Compounds of* SUM.

absum, *am absent.*
adsum, *am present.*
desum, *am wanting.*
insum, *am in.*
intersum, *am between, differ, take part in.*
obsum, *injure.*
praesum, *am before, am at the head of.*
subsum, *am under.*
supersum, *am over, survive.*
possum, potui, posse, *am able.*
prosum, profui, prodesse, *benefit.*

VII.—*Compounds of* EO.

abeo, *go away.*
adeo, *go to.*
anteeo, *go before.*
circumeo, *go round.*
coeo, *go together.*
exeo, *go out.*
ineo, *enter.*
intereo, *perish.*
obeo, *go over, engage in.*
pereo, *perish.*
praeeo, *go before.*
praetereo, *go past.*
prodeo, *go forth.*
redeo, *return.*
subeo, *go under.*
veneo, venii, ——, *go for sale.*

VIII.—*Compounds of* FERO.

ante-fĕro, *prefer.*
circum-fĕro, *carry round.*
de-fĕro, *convey.*
per-fĕro, *carry through.*
prae-fĕro, *carry before.*
pro-fĕro, *bring out.*
re-fĕro, *bring back.*
trans-fĕro, *carry across.*
praeter-fĕro, ——, -lātum, *carry past.*
post-fĕro, ——, ——, *put after, esteem less.*
affĕro, attŭli, allātum, afferre, *bring to.*
aufĕro, abstŭli, ablātum, auferre, *carry off.*
confĕro, contŭli, collātum, conferre, *bring together.*
differo, distŭli, dilātum, differre, *put off.*
differo, ——, ——, differre, *differ.*
effĕro, extŭli, elātum, efferre, *carry out.*
infĕro, intŭli, illātum, inferre, *carry in.*
offĕro, obtŭli, oblātum, offerre, *offer.*
suffero, sustŭli, ——, sufferre, *endure.*

APPENDIX C.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

The Romans did not reckon the days of the month as we do, onwards from the first day, but had a system of reckoning peculiar to themselves.

They had three fixed days in each month :—

1. *Kalendae* ((*kalo*), proclaim), proclamation day, the Calends, so called because the priests then *proclaimed* the divisions of the month.

2. *Nonae* (*nonus*, ninth), the Nones, so called because they occurred on the *ninth* day before the Ides.

3. *Idus* ((*iduo*), divide), the Ides, so called because they divided the month into two nearly equal parts.

The Calends always fell on the *first* day of the month.

The Nones fell on the *seventh* day of the four months, March, May, July, and October, and on the *fifth* day of the other months.

The Ides fell on the *fifteenth* of the four months, March, May, July, and October, and on the *thirteenth* of the other months.

Thus—*Kalendis Januariis, Februariis*, &c., or *Kal. Jan., Feb.*, &c. = On the 1st of January, February, &c. *Nonis Martiis, Maiis*, or *Non. Mart., Mai.* = On the 7th of March, May. *Nonis Aprilibus, Decembribus*, or *Non. Apr., Dec.* = On the 5th of April, December. *Idibus Octobribus*, or *Id. Oct.* = On the 15th of October. *Idibus Septembribus*, or *Id. Sept.* = On the 13th of September.

In reckoning the other days of the month, the Romans counted *backwards* from the next fixed day, and always included in the reckoning both the day *from* which and the day *to* which they counted.

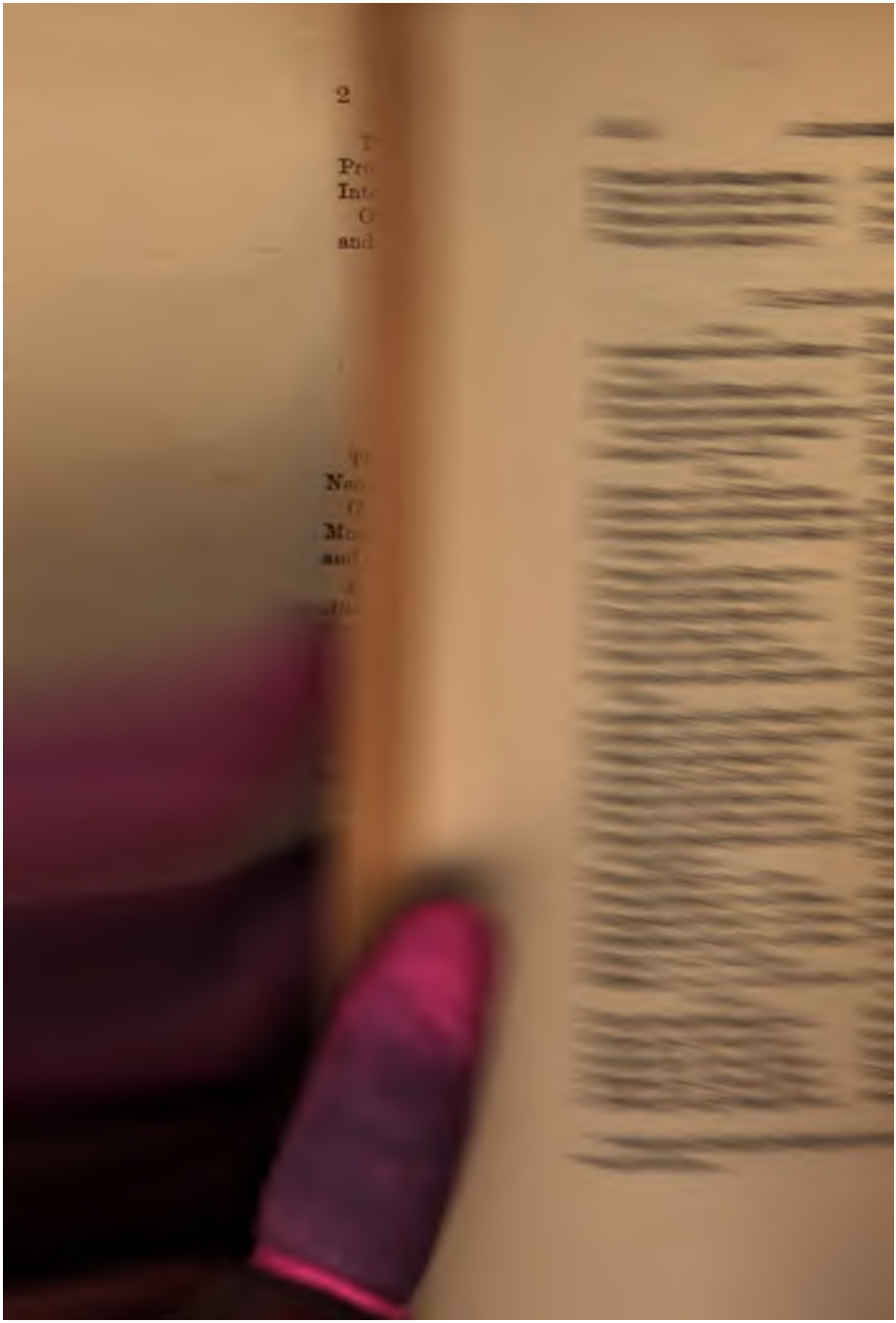
Thus—*Pridie* (*ante*) *Kalendas Januarias*, or *Prid. Kal. Jan.* = On the 31st of December. *Pridie* (*ante*) *Nonas Februarias*, or *Prid. Non. Febr.* = On the 4th of February. *Pridie* (*ante*) *Idus Martias*, or *Prid. Id. Mart.* = On the 14th of March. *Tertio* (*die ante*) *Nonas Januarias*, or *III. Non. Jan.* = On the 3d of January. *Sexto* (*die ante*) *Idus Maias*, or *VI. Id. Mai.* = On the 10th of May. *Nono* (*die ante*) *Kalendas Decembres*, or *IX. Kal. Dec.* = On the 23d of November. *Undevigesimo* (*die ante*) *Kalendas Januarias*, or *XIX. Kal. Jan.* = On the 14th of December.

Note.—In Cicero, we often find, for instance, On the 3d of January, expressed thus, *a. d. III. Non. Jan.* = *ante diem tertium Nonas Januarias* = *die tertio ante Nonas Januarias*, where, it would seem, *die tertio* is inserted between *ante* and its case and thus attracted into the accusative, *diem tertium*. So, On the 23d of December, *a. d. X. Kal. Dec.* We even find such an expression governed by a preposition; as, *In a. d. VIII. et VII. Kal. Oct. comitiis dicta dies*, = The *comitia* was appointed for the 24th and 25th of September.

Days of Month.	Martius, Maius, Julius (Quintilis), October. (31 *days*).	Januarius, Augustus (Sextilis), December. (31 *days*).	Aprilis, Junius, September, November. (30 *days*).	Februarius. (28 *days*, and in leap year 29).
1	*Kalendis.*	*Kalendis.*	*Kalendis.*	*Kalendis.*
2	VI. Non.	IV. Non.	IV. Non.	IV. Non.
3	V. Non.	III. Non.	III. Non.	III. Non.
4	IV. Non.	Prid. Non.	Prid. Non.	Prid. Non.
5	III. Non.	*Nonis.*	*Nonis.*	*Nonis.*
6	Prid. Non.	VIII. Id.	VIII. Id.	VIII. Id.
7	*Nonis.*	VII. Id.	VII. Id.	VII. Id.
8	VIII. Id.	VI. Id.	VI. Id.	VI. Id.
9	VII. Id.	V. Id.	V. Id.	V. Id.
10	VI. Id.	IV. Id.	IV. Id.	IV. Id.
11	V. Id.	III. Id.	III. Id.	III. Id.
12	IV. Id.	Prid. Id.	Prid. Id.	Prid. Id.
13	III. Id.	*Idibus.*	*Idibus.*	*Idibus.*
14	Prid. Id.	XIX. Kal.	XVIII. Kal.	XVI. Kal. Mart.
15	*Idibus.*	XVIII. Kal.	XVII. Kal.	XV. Kal. Mart.
16	XVII. Kal.	XVII. Kal.	XVI. Kal.	XIV. Kal. Mart.
17	XVI. Kal.	XVI. Kal.	XV. Kal.	XIII. Kal. Mart.
18	XV. Kal.	XV. Kal.	XIV. Kal.	XII. Kal. Mart.
19	XIV. Kal.	XIV. Kal.	XIII. Kal.	XI. Kal. Mart.
20	XIII. Kal.	XIII. Kal.	XII. Kal.	X. Kal. Mart.
21	XII. Kal.	XII. Kal.	XI. Kal.	IX. Kal. Mart.
22	XI. Kal.	XI. Kal.	X. Kal.	VIII. Kal. Mart.
23	X. Kal.	X. Kal.	IX. Kal.	VII. Kal. Mart.
24	IX. Kal.	IX. Kal.	VIII. Kal.	VI. Kal. Mart.*
25	VIII. Kal.	VIII. Kal.	VII. Kal.	V. Kal. Mart.
26	VII. Kal.	VII. Kal.	VI. Kal.	IV. Kal. Mart.
27	VI. Kal.	VI. Kal.	V. Kal.	III. Kal. Mart.
28	V. Kal.	V. Kal.	IV. Kal.	Prid. Kal. Mart.
29	IV. Kal.	IV. Kal.	III. Kal.	
30	III. Kal.	III. Kal.	Prid. Kal.	
31	Prid. Kal.	Prid. Kal.		

of the following month.

* In leap-year, the intercalated day was inserted between *VII. Kal. Mart.* and *VI. Kal. Mart.*, and expressed by *bissexto Kal. Mart.* In other words, instead of adding a day at the end of February in leap-year, the Romans reckoned the 24th of February twice. Hence *Bissextile*, one of the names for leap-year.

150

1.
Cal
div
2
occ
:
di